# User Manual SIGMA NE SIGMA NE UOI/UPM

# **Rockwell** Automation

#### Publication Date: March 10, 2003 **This document applies to the SIGMA NE UOI/UPM.** Rockwell Publication number 56AMXN-UM001A-EN-P

Revision	Date	Description
V1.001	March 10, 2003	Initial version
V2.001	March 10, 2003	
V3.001	March 10, 2003	
V4.001	March 10, 2003	
V5.001	March 10, 2003	
V6.001	March 10, 2003	
V6.002	March 10, 2003	
V6.003	March 10, 2003	

Windows, MS-DOS, Visual Basic, Excel, Access and FoxPro are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

Ethernet is a trademark of Xerox.

VAX, VAXstation, DEC and DECnet are trademarks of Digital Equipment Corporation.

In Touch by Wonderware is a trademark of Wonderware Software Development Corporation.

iRMX is a registered trademark of Intel Corporation.

IBM is a registered trademark of International Business Machine Corporation.

All rights reserved. No part of this manual may be reproduced or copied in any form or by any means without written permission of the publisher.

The information in this users manual is subject to change without notice.

#### ATTENTION

ONLY QUALIFIED ELECTRICAL PERSONNEL FAMILIAR WITH THE CONSTRUCTION AND OPERATION OF THIS EQUIPMENT AND THE HAZARDS INVOLVED SHOULD INSTALL, ADJUST, OPERATE, OR SERVICE THIS EQUIPMENT. READ AND UNDERSTAND THIS MANUAL IN ITS ENTIRETY BEFORE PROCEEDING. FAILURE TO OBSERVE THIS PRECAUTION COULD RESULT IN BODILY INJURY.

#### ATTENTION

THE USER MUST PROVIDE AN EXTERNAL, HARDWIRED EMERGENCY STOP CIRCUIT THAT WILL DISABLE THE SYSTEM IN CASE OF IMPROPER OPERATION. UNCONTROLLED MACHINE OPERATION MAY RESULT IF THIS IS NOT DONE. FAILURE TO OBSERVE THIS PRECAUTION COULD RESULT IN BODILY INJURY.

#### ATTENTION

THE CONTROLLER OPERATOR INTERFACE MAY BE USED TO PERFORM CRITICAL FUNCTIONS SUCH AS STOPPING THE CONTROLLED EQUIPMENT. THE USER MUST DESIGN THE OPERATOR INTERFACE TO ENSURE THAT THE OPERATOR CAN RECOGNIZE AND ACCESS CRITICAL FUNCTIONS QUICKLY. FAILURE TO OBSERVE THIS PRECAUTION COULD RESULT IN BODILY INJURY.

#### Table of Contents For The SIGMA NE UOI/UPM Operator's Manual

the SIGMA NE Universal Process Monitor       1-1         1.1       About SIGMA NE UOI/UPM       1-2         1.2       About SIGMA NE Operator Interface Design       1-8         1.3       Software Requirements       1-9         1.4       Hardware Requirements       1-9         1.5       Setting Up a SIGMA Client       1-9         1.6       Setting Up a SIGMA Client Software       1-10         1.7.1       Installing Appropriate Windows Operating System (Windows 2000)       1-10         1.7.3       Using the SIGMA Client Communication With SIGMA Server       1-19         1.7.5       SIGMA Client Communication With SIGMA Server       1-10         1.7.4       Verifying SIGMA Client Communication With SIGMA Server       1-22         1.8       Installing SIGMA Server Software       1-22         1.8.1       Installing SIGMA Server IP Address       1-22         1.8.2       Changing the SIGMA Server IP Address       1-22         1.8.2       Changing Streen Objects       2-4         2.4       Describing Screen Objects       2-4         2.5       Accessing Screens       2-3         2.4       Describing Screen Objects       2-4         2.5       Accessing Screens       2-3         2	Chapter 1	Introducing the SIGMA NE Universal Operator Interface and	
1.1       About SIGMA NE UO/UPM.       1-2         1.2       About SIGMA NE Operator Interface Design.       1-8         1.3       Software Requirements.       1-9         1.4       Hardware Requirements.       1-9         1.5       Setting Up a SIGMA Client       1-9         1.6       Setting Up a SIGMA Client Software       1-10         1.7.1       Installing Appropriate Windows Operating System (Windows 2000)       1-10         1.7.2       Installing Appropriate Windows Operating System (Windows 2000)       1-10         1.7.3       Using the SIGMA NE Installation CD.       1-10         1.7.4       Verifying SIGMA Client Communication With SIGMA Server       1-19         1.7.5       SIGMA Client Quick Start       1-20         1.8       Installing SIGMA Server Software       1-22         1.8.1       Starting a SIGMA Server IP Address       1-22         1.8.2       Changing the SIGMA Server IP Address       1-22         2.1       Overview       2-1       2-2         2.3       Types Of Screens       2-3         2.4       Describing Screen Objects       2-4         2.5       Accessing Screens       2-9         2.6       Alarm/Fault Handling       2-12	-	the SIGMA NE Universal Process Monitor	1-1
1.1       About SIGMA NE UOI/UPM.       1-2         1.2       About SIGMA NE Operator Interface Design.       1-8         1.3       Software Requirements.       1-9         1.4       Hardware Requirements.       1-9         1.5       Setting Up a SIGMA Client       1-9         1.6       Setting Up a SIGMA Client Software.       1-10         1.7.1       Client Installation Procedure       1-10         1.7.2       Installing Appropriate Windows Operating System (Windows 2000)       1-10         1.7.3       Using the SIGMA Client Communication With SIGMA Server.       1-19         1.7.4       Verifying SIGMA Client Communication With SIGMA Server.       1-19         1.7.5       SIGMA Client Quick Start.       1-22         1.8       Installing A SIGMA Server Software       1-22         1.8.1       Starting a SIGMA Server IP Address       1-22         1.8.2       Changing the SIGMA Server IP Address       1-22         1.8.2       Changing the SIGMA Server IP Address       2-1         2.2       UOI/UPM Start-Up       2-2         2.3       Types Of Screens       2-3         2.4       Describing Screen Objects       2-4         2.5       Accessing Screens       2-3			
1.2       About SIGMA NE Operator Interface Design.       1-8         1.3       Software Requirements.       1-9         1.4       Hardware Requirements.       1-9         1.5       Setting Up a SIGMA Client       1-9         1.6       Setting Up a SIGMA Client Software.       1-9         1.7       Installing SIGMA Client Software.       1-10         1.7.1       Client Installation Procedure.       1-10         1.7.2       Installing Appropriate Windows Operating System (Windows 2000)       1-10         1.7.3       Using the SIGMA NE Installation CD.       1-10         1.7.4       Verifving SIGMA Client Communication With SIGMA Server.       1-19         1.7.5       SIGMA Client Quick Start.       1-22         1.8       Installing SIGMA Server Software       1-22         1.8.1       Starting a SIGMA Server.       1-22         1.8.2       Changing the SIGMA Server IP Address       1-22         1.8.2       Changing the SIGMA Server IP Address       1-22         2.1       Overview       2-1       2-2         2.2       UOI/UPM Operation       2-1       2-2         2.3       Types Of Screens       2-3       2-3         2.4       Describing Screen Objects       2-4<	<u>1.1</u>	About SIGMA NE UOI/UPM	1-2
1.3       Software Requirements       1-9         1.4       Hardware Requirements       1-9         1.5       Setting Up a SIGMA Client       1-9         1.6       Setting Up a SIGMA Server       1-9         1.7       Installing SIGMA Client Software       1-10         1.7.1       Client Installation Procedure       1-10         1.7.2       Installing Appropriate Windows Operating System (Windows 2000)       1-10         1.7.3       Using the SIGMA NE Installation CD       1-10         1.7.4       Verifying SIGMA Client Communication With SIGMA Server       1-19         1.7.5       SIGMA Client Quick Start       1-20         1.8       Installing SIGMA Server Software       1-22         1.8.1       Starting a SIGMA Server       1-22         1.8.2       Changing the SIGMA Server IP Address       1-22         1.8.2       Changing the SIGMA Server IP Address       1-22         2.4       Describing Screen Objects       2-24         2.5       Accessing Screens       2-3         2.4       Describing Screen Objects       2-4         2.5       Accessing Screens       2-9         2.6       Alarm/Fault Handling       3-1         3.1.1       The Trending Menu. <td><u>1.2</u></td> <td>About SIGMA NE Operator Interface Design</td> <td>1-8</td>	<u>1.2</u>	About SIGMA NE Operator Interface Design	1-8
1.4       Hardware Requirements.       1-9         1.5       Setting Up a SIGMA Client       1-9         1.6       Setting Up a SIGMA Client Software.       1-9         1.7       Installing SIGMA Client Software.       1-10         1.7.1       Client Installation Procedure.       1-10         1.7.2       Installing Appropriate Windows Operating System (Windows 2000)       1-10         1.7.3       Using the SIGMA NE Installation CD.       1-10         1.7.4       Verifying SIGMA Client Communication With SIGMA Server.       1-19         1.7.5       SIGMA Client Quick Start.       1-20         1.8       Installing SIGMA Server Software.       1-22         1.8.1       Starting a SIGMA Server IP Address       1-22         1.8.2       Changing the SIGMA Server IP Address       1-22         1.8.2       Changing the SIGMA Server IP Address       1-22         2.1       UOI/UPM Operation       2-1       2-2         2.2       UVI/UPM Start-Up       2-2       2-2         2.3       Types Of Screens       2-3       2-4         2.4       Describing Screen Objects       2-4       2-5       Accessing Screens       2-9         2.6       Alarm/Fault Handling       2-12       3-11	<u>1.3</u>	Software Requirements	1-9
1.5       Setting Up a SIGMA Client       1-9         1.6       Setting Up a SIGMA Server       1-9         1.7       Installing SIGMA Client Software       1-10         1.7.1       Client Installation Procedure       1-10         1.7.2       Installing Appropriate Windows Operating System (Windows 2000)       1-10         1.7.3       Using the SIGMA NE Installation CD       1-10         1.7.4       Verifying SIGMA Client Communication With SIGMA Server       1-19         1.7.5       SIGMA Client Quick Start       1-20         1.8       Installing SIGMA Server Software       1-22         1.8.1       Starting a SIGMA Server       1-22         1.8.2       Changing the SIGMA Server       1-22         2.4       Chapter 2       UOI/UPM Operation       2-1         2.2       UOI/UPM Start-Up       2-2       2.3         2.3       Types Of Screens       2-3       2-4         2.5       Accessing Screens       2-9       2-6         2.6       Alarm/Fault Handling       2-12       2-12 </td <td><u>1.4</u></td> <td>Hardware Requirements</td> <td>1-9</td>	<u>1.4</u>	Hardware Requirements	1-9
1.6       Setting Up a SIGMA Server.       1-9         1.7       Installing SIGMA Client Software.       1-10         1.7.1       Client Installation Procedure.       1-10         1.7.2       Installing Appropriate Windows Operating System (Windows 2000)       1-10         1.7.3       Using the SIGMA NE Installation CD.       1-10         1.7.4       Verifving SIGMA Client Communication With SIGMA Server.       1-19         1.7.5       SIGMA Client Quick Start.       1-20         1.8       Installing SIGMA Server Software       1-22         1.8.1       Starting a SIGMA Server Software       1-22         1.8.2       Changing the SIGMA Server IP Address       1-22         1.8.2       Changing the SIGMA Server IP Address       1-22         2.4       Describing Screen Objects       2-2         2.3       Types Of Screens       2-3         2.4       Describing Screen Objects       2-4         2.5       Accessing Screens       2-9         2.6       Alarm/Fault Handling       2-12         Chapter 3       Trending Menu       3-2         3.1.1       The Trend Screen       3-3         3.2.1       Selecting Variables for the Trend Screen       3-3         3.2.1	<u>1.5</u>	Setting Up a SIGMA Client	1-9
1.7       Installing SIGMA Client Software.       1-10         1.7.1       Client Installation Procedure       1-10         1.7.2       Installing Appropriate Windows Operating System (Windows 2000)       1-10         1.7.3       Using the SIGMA NE Installation CD.       1-10         1.7.4       Verifying SIGMA Client Communication With SIGMA Server.       1-19         1.7.5       SIGMA Client Quick Start       1-20         1.8       Installing SIGMA Server Software       1-22         1.8.1       Starting a SIGMA Server       1-22         1.8.2       Changing the SIGMA Server       1-22         1.8.2       Changing the SIGMA Server IP Address       1-22         2.1       Overview       2-1         2.2       UOI/UPM Operation       2-1         2.3       Types Of Screens       2-2         2.4       Describing Screen Objects       2-4         2.5       Accessing Screens       2-9         2.6       Alarm/Fault Handling       2-12         Chapter 3       Trending Menu       3-2         3.1.1       The Trending Menu       3-2         3.2.2       The Trend Screen       3-3         3.2.1       Selecting Variables for the Trend Screen       3-6	<u>1.6</u>	Setting Up a SIGMA Server	1-9
1.7.1       Client Installation Procedure       1-10         1.7.2       Installing Appropriate Windows Operating System (Windows 2000)       1-10         1.7.3       Using the SIGMA NE Installation CD       1-10         1.7.4       Verifying SIGMA Client Communication With SIGMA Server       1-19         1.7.5       SIGMA Client Quick Start       1-20         1.8       Installing SIGMA Server Software       1-22         1.8.1       Starting a SIGMA Server       1-22         1.8.2       Changing the SIGMA Server IP Address       1-22         1.8.2       Changing the SIGMA Server IP Address       1-22         2.1       Overview       2-1       2.2         2.3       Types Of Screens       2-2         2.3       Types Of Screens       2-3         2.4       Describing Screen Objects       2-4         2.5       Accessing Screens       2-9         2.6       Alarm/Fault Handling       2-12         Chapter 3       Trending Menu       3-2         3.2.1       Selecting Variables for the Trend Screen       3-3         3.2.1       Defining the Center Value and the Units per Division       3-9         3.2.2       Adjusting the Time Interval       3-11         3.2.3<	<u>1.7</u>	Installing SIGMA Client Software	1-10
1.7.2       Installing Appropriate Windows Operating System (Windows 2000)       1-10         1.7.3       Using the SIGMA NE Installation CD       1-10         1.7.4       Verifying SIGMA Client Communication With SIGMA Server       1-19         1.7.5       SIGMA Client Quick Start       1-20         1.8       Installing SIGMA Server Software       1-22         1.8.1       Starting a SIGMA Server       1-22         1.8.2       Changing the SIGMA Server IP Address       1-22         1.8.2       Changing the SIGMA Server IP Address       1-22         2.1       Overview       2-1         2.2       UOI/UPM Operation       2-1         2.1       Overview       2-2         2.3       Types Of Screens       2-3         2.4       Describing Screen Objects       2-4         2.5       Accessing Screens       2-9         2.6       Alarm/Fault Handling       2-12         Chapter 3       Trending Menu       3-2         3.1       The Trend Screen       3-3         3.2.1       Selecting Variables for the Trend Screen       3-6         3.2.1.1       Defining the Center Value and the Units per Division       3-9         3.2.2       Adjusting the Time Interval	<u>1.7.1</u>	Client Installation Procedure	1-10
1.7.3Using the SIGMA NE Installation CD.1-101.7.4Verifying SIGMA Client Communication With SIGMA Server1-191.7.5SIGMA Client Quick Start1-201.8Installing SIGMA Server Software1-221.8.1Starting a SIGMA Server1-221.8.2Changing the SIGMA Server IP Address1-221.8.2Changing the SIGMA Server IP Address1-221.8.2Charping the SIGMA Server IP Address1-222.1Overview.2-12.2UOI/UPM Operation2-12.3Types Of Screens2-32.4Describing Screen Objects2-42.5Accessing Screens2-92.6Alarm/Fault Handling2-12Chapter 3Trending Overview3-13.1The Trending Menu3-23.2The Trend Screen3-33.2.1Selecting Nariables for the Trend Screen3-93.2.2Adjusting the Center Value and the Units per Division3-93.2.3Selecting a Time Axis3-113.2.3Selecting a Time Axis3-113.2.3Live Mode3-11	<u>1.7.2</u>	Installing Appropriate Windows Operating System (Windows 2000)	1-10
1.7.4Verifying SIGMA Client Communication With SIGMA Server.1-191.7.5SIGMA Client Quick Start.1-201.8Installing SIGMA Server Software1-221.8.1Starting a SIGMA Server1-221.8.2Changing the SIGMA Server IP Address1-22Chapter 2UOI/UPM Operation2-12.1Overview2-12.2UOI/UPM Start-Up2-22.3Types Of Screens2-32.4Describing Screen Objects2-42.5Accessing Screens2-92.6Alarm/Fault Handling2-12Chapter 3Trending Menu3-13.1The Trend Screen3-33.2.1Selecting Variables for the Trend Screen3-63.2.1.1Defining the Center Value and the Units per Division3-93.2.2Adjusting the Time Interval3-113.2.3Selecting a Time Axis3-113.2.1Live Mode3-11	<u>1.7.3</u>	Using the SIGMA NE Installation CD.	1-10
1.7.5SIGMA Client Quick Start1-201.8Installing SIGMA Server Software1-221.8.1Starting a SIGMA Server1-221.8.2Changing the SIGMA Server IP Address1-22Chapter 2UOI/UPM Operation2-12.1Overview2-12.2UOI/UPM Start-Up2-22.3Types Of Screens2-32.4Describing Screen Objects2-42.5Accessing Screens2-92.6Alarm/Fault Handling3-13.1Trending Overview3-13.2.1Selecting Variables for the Trend Screen3-33.2.1Defining the Center Value and the Units per Division3-93.2.2Adjusting the Time Interval3-113.2.3Selecting a Time Axis3-113.2.1Live Mode3-11	<u>1.7.4</u>	Verifying SIGMA Client Communication With SIGMA Server	1-19
1.8       Installing SIGMA Server Software       1-22         1.8.1       Starting a SIGMA Server       1-22         1.8.2       Changing the SIGMA Server IP Address       1-22         Chapter 2       UOI/UPM Operation       2-1         2.1       Overview       2-1         2.2       UOI/UPM Start-Up       2-2         2.3       Types Of Screens       2-3         2.4       Describing Screen Objects       2-4         2.5       Accessing Screens       2-9         2.6       Alarm/Fault Handling       2-12         Chapter 3       Trending Overview       3-1         3.1       The Trending Menu       3-2         3.2.1       Selecting Variables for the Trend Screen       3-6         3.2.1       Defining the Center Value and the Units per Division       3-9         3.2.2       Adjusting the Time Interval       3-11         3.2.3       Selecting a Time Axis       3-11         3.2.3       Live Mode       3-11	<u>1.7.5</u>	SIGMA Client Quick Start	1-20
1.8.1       Starting a SIGMA Server       1-22         1.8.2       Changing the SIGMA Server IP Address       1-22         Chapter 2       UOI/UPM Operation       2-1         2.1       Overview       2-1         2.2       UOI/UPM Start-Up       2-2         2.3       Types Of Screens       2-3         2.4       Describing Screen Objects       2-4         2.5       Accessing Screens       2-9         2.6       Alarm/Fault Handling       2-12         Chapter 3       Trending Overview       3-1         3.1       The Trending Menu       3-2         3.2.1       Selecting Variables for the Trend Screen       3-6         3.2.1       Defining the Center Value and the Units per Division       3-9         3.2.2       Adjusting the Time Interval       3-11         3.2.3       Selecting a Time Axis       3-11	<u>1.8</u>	Installing SIGMA Server Software	1-22
1.8.2       Changing the SIGMA Server IP Address       1-22         Chapter 2       UOI/UPM Operation       2-1         2.1       Overview       2-1         2.2       UOI/UPM Start-Up       2-2         2.3       Types Of Screens       2-3         2.4       Describing Screen Objects       2-4         2.5       Accessing Screens       2-9         2.6       Alarm/Fault Handling       2-12         Chapter 3       Trending Menu       3-1         3.1       The Trending Menu       3-2         3.2.1       Selecting Variables for the Trend Screen       3-6         3.2.1       Defining the Center Value and the Units per Division       3-9         3.2.2       Adjusting the Time Interval       3-11         3.2.3       Selecting a Time Axis       3-11	<u>1.8.1</u>	Starting a SIGMA Server	1-22
Chapter 2UOI/UPM Operation2-12.1Overview2-12.2UOI/UPM Start-Up2-22.3Types Of Screens2-32.4Describing Screen Objects2-42.5Accessing Screens2-92.6Alarm/Fault Handling2-12Chapter 3Trending Overview3-13.1The Trending Menu3-23.2The Trending Menu3-33.2.1Selecting Variables for the Trend Screen3-63.2.1.1Defining the Center Value and the Units per Division3-93.2.2Adjusting the Time Interval3-113.2.3Selecting a Time Axis3-113.2.3.1Live Mode3-11	1.8.2	Changing the SIGMA Server IP Address	1-22
Chapter 2UOI/UPM Operation2-12.1Overview2-12.2UOI/UPM Start-Up2-22.3Types Of Screens2-32.4Describing Screen Objects2-42.5Accessing Screens2-92.6Alarm/Fault Handling2-12Chapter 3Trending Overview3-13.1The Trending Menu3-23.2The Trend Screen3-33.2.1Selecting Variables for the Trend Screen3-63.2.1.1Defining the Center Value and the Units per Division3-93.2.2Adjusting the Time Interval3-113.2.3Selecting a Time Axis3-113.2.1Live Mode3-11			
2.1Overview2-12.2UOI/UPM Start-Up2-22.3Types Of Screens2-32.4Describing Screen Objects2-42.5Accessing Screens2-92.6Alarm/Fault Handling2-12Chapter 3Trending Overview3-13.1The Trending Menu3-23.2The Trend Screen3-33.2.1Selecting Variables for the Trend Screen3-63.2.1.1Defining the Center Value and the Units per Division3-93.2.2Adjusting the Time Interval3-113.2.3Selecting a Time Axis3-113.2.1Live Mode3-11	Chapter 2	UOI/UPM Operation	2-1
2.1Overview2-12.2UOI/UPM Start-Up2-22.3Types Of Screens2-32.4Describing Screen Objects2-42.5Accessing Screens2-92.6Alarm/Fault Handling2-12Chapter 3Trending Overview3-13.1The Trending Menu3-23.2The Trending Menu3-23.2Selecting Variables for the Trend Screen3-33.2.1Selecting Variables for the Trend Screen3-63.2.1.1Defining the Center Value and the Units per Division3-93.2.2Adjusting the Time Interval3-113.2.3Selecting a Time Axis3-113.2.3.1Live Mode3-11			
2.2UOI/UPM Start-Up2-22.3Types Of Screens2-32.4Describing Screen Objects2-42.5Accessing Screens2-92.6Alarm/Fault Handling2-12Chapter 3Trending Overview3-13.1The Trending Menu3-23.2The Trend Screen3-33.2.1Selecting Variables for the Trend Screen3-63.2.1Defining the Center Value and the Units per Division3-93.2.2Adjusting the Time Interval3-113.2.3Selecting a Time Axis3-113.2.1Live Mode3-11	<u>2.1</u>	Overview	2-1
2.3Types Of Screens2-32.4Describing Screen Objects2-42.5Accessing Screens2-92.6Alarm/Fault Handling2-12Chapter 3Trending Overview3-13.1The Trending Menu3-23.2The Trend Screen3-33.2.1Selecting Variables for the Trend Screen3-63.2.1Defining the Center Value and the Units per Division3-93.2.2Adjusting the Time Interval3-113.2.3Selecting a Time Axis3-113.2.3.1Live Mode3-11	<u>2.2</u>	UOI/UPM Start-Up	2-2
2.4Describing Screen Objects2-42.5Accessing Screens2-92.6Alarm/Fault Handling2-12Chapter 3Trending Overview3.1Trending Overview3.1.1The Trending Menu3.2The Trend Screen3.2The Trend Screen3.2.1Selecting Variables for the Trend Screen3.2.1Defining the Center Value and the Units per Division3.2.2Adjusting the Time Interval3.2.3Selecting a Time Axis3.2.1Live Mode3.2.1Live Mode	<u>2.3</u>	Types Of Screens	2-3
2.5Accessing Screens2-92.6Alarm/Fault Handling2-12Chapter 3Trending3-13.1Trending Overview3-13.1.1The Trending Menu3-23.2The Trend Screen3-33.2.1Selecting Variables for the Trend Screen3-63.2.1.1Defining the Center Value and the Units per Division3-93.2.2Adjusting the Time Interval3-113.2.3Selecting a Time Axis3-113.2.3.1Live Mode3-11	<u>2.4</u>	Describing Screen Objects	2-4
2.6Alarm/Fault Handling2-12Chapter 3Trending3-13.1Trending Overview3-13.1.1The Trending Menu3-23.2The Trend Screen3-33.2.1Selecting Variables for the Trend Screen3-63.2.1.1Defining the Center Value and the Units per Division3-93.2.2Adjusting the Time Interval3-113.2.3Selecting a Time Axis3-113.2.3.1Live Mode3-11	<u>2.5</u>	Accessing Screens	2-9
Chapter 3Trending3-13.1Trending Overview3-13.1.1The Trending Menu3-23.2The Trend Screen3-33.2.1Selecting Variables for the Trend Screen3-63.2.1.1Defining the Center Value and the Units per Division3-93.2.2Adjusting the Time Interval3-113.2.3Selecting a Time Axis3-113.2.3.1Live Mode3-11	<u>2.6</u>	<u>Alarm/Fault Handling</u>	2-12
Chapter 3Trending3-13.1Trending Overview3-13.1.1The Trending Menu3-23.2The Trend Screen3-33.2.1Selecting Variables for the Trend Screen3-63.2.1.1Defining the Center Value and the Units per Division3-93.2.2Adjusting the Time Interval3-113.2.3Selecting a Time Axis3-113.2.3.1Live Mode3-11			
3.1Trending Overview3-13.1.1The Trending Menu3-23.2The Trend Screen3-33.2.1Selecting Variables for the Trend Screen3-63.2.1.1Defining the Center Value and the Units per Division3-93.2.2Adjusting the Time Interval3-113.2.3Selecting a Time Axis3-113.2.3.1Live Mode3-11	Chapter 3	Trending	3-1
3.1Trending Overview3-13.1.1The Trending Menu3-23.2The Trend Screen3-33.2.1Selecting Variables for the Trend Screen3-63.2.1.1Defining the Center Value and the Units per Division3-93.2.2Adjusting the Time Interval3-113.2.3Selecting a Time Axis3-113.2.3.1Live Mode3-11			
3.1.1The Trending Menu3-23.2The Trend Screen3-33.2.1Selecting Variables for the Trend Screen3-63.2.1.1Defining the Center Value and the Units per Division3-93.2.2Adjusting the Time Interval3-113.2.3Selecting a Time Axis3-113.2.3.1Live Mode3-11	<u>3.1</u>	Trending Overview	3-1
3.2       The Trend Screen       3-3         3.2.1       Selecting Variables for the Trend Screen       3-6         3.2.1.1       Defining the Center Value and the Units per Division       3-9         3.2.2       Adjusting the Time Interval       3-11         3.2.3       Selecting a Time Axis       3-11         3.2.3.1       Live Mode       3-11	<u>3.1.1</u>	The Trending Menu	3-2
3.2.1Selecting Variables for the Trend Screen3-63.2.1.1Defining the Center Value and the Units per Division3-93.2.2Adjusting the Time Interval3-113.2.3Selecting a Time Axis3-113.2.3.1Live Mode3-11	<u>3.2</u>	The Trend Screen	3-3
3.2.1.1Defining the Center Value and the Units per Division3-93.2.2Adjusting the Time Interval3-113.2.3Selecting a Time Axis3-113.2.3.1Live Mode3-11	<u>3.2.1</u>	Selecting Variables for the Trend Screen	3-6
3.2.2Adjusting the Time Interval3-113.2.3Selecting a Time Axis3-113.2.3.1Live Mode3-11	<u>3.2</u>	2.1.1 Defining the Center Value and the Units per Division	3-9
3.2.3         Selecting a Time Axis         3-11           3.2.3.1         Live Mode         3-11	3.2.2	Adjusting the Time Interval	3-11
<u>3.2.3.1</u> <u>Live Mode</u>	3.2.3	Selecting a Time Axis	3-11
	3.2	2.3.1 Live Mode	3-11
<u>3.2.3</u> <u>Selecting a Time Axis</u>	<u>3.2.2</u>	Adjusting the Time Interval	
	3.2	2.3.1 Live Mode	3-11

3.2.	3.2 Historical Mode	3-12
3.2.4	Saving, Loading, and Deleting Variable Data with Memory Option	3-13
3.2.5	Printing a Trend Graph	
<u>3.3</u> <u>1</u>	The Trend Screen Trigger Feature	3-16
<u>3.4</u> <u>S</u>	ummary	3-21
Chapter 4	Snapshots	4-1
<u>4.1</u> <u>S</u>	napshot Overview	4-1
<u>4.2</u> <u>(</u>	<u> Jo Snapshots</u>	4-3
4.2.1	Configuring Go Snapshots	4-3
<u>4.2.2</u>	Generating Go Snapshots	4-5
<u>4.3</u> <u>C</u>	Capture Snapshots	4-7
<u>4.4</u> <u>1</u>	<u>rigger Variable Snapshots</u>	4-8
<u>4.5</u> <u>S</u>	napshot File Maintenance	4-9
<u>4.5.1</u>	Deleting Local Files with the File Maintenance Screen	4-13
<u>4.5.2</u>	Deleting Server Files with the File Maintenance Screen	
<u>4.6</u> <u>S</u>	napshot Export Utility	4-14
<u>4.6.1</u>	Selecting Variables with the Export Utility	
<u>4.7</u> <u>S</u>	<u>ummary</u>	
Chapter 5	Alarms and Faults System	5-1
<u>5.1</u> <u>A</u>	<u> Marm/Fault Overview</u>	5-1
<u>5.2</u> <u>C</u>	Color Descriptions of Exceptions	5-3
<u>5.3</u> <u>1</u>	<u>The Alarm/Fault Summary Screen</u>	5-4
<u>5.4</u> <u>1</u>	<u>The Event History Screen</u>	5-6
<u>5.4.1</u>	Filtering Events	5-9
<u>5.4.2</u>	Printing an Event List	5-13
<u>5.5</u> <u>S</u>	ummary	5-15
Chapter 6	Drive Overview Screen and Support Screens	6-1
6.1 T	The Drive Overview Screen	6-2
6.1.1	Viewing Bar Charts	6-5
6.1.2	Viewing Distributive Power Diagnostic Screens	6-6
6.1.	2.1 The Help Option	6-8
6.1.	2.2 The PMI SD3000 Diagnostic Screen	6-11
<u>6.1</u> .	2.3 The PMI SD3000 Regen Diagnostic Screen	6-12
6.1.	2.4 The PMI SA3000 Diagnostic Screen	6-13
6.1.	2.5 The PMI SA3000 Parallel Diagnostic Screen	6-14
<u>6.1</u> .	2.6 The PMI SA500 Diagnostic Screen	6-15
<u>6.1</u> .	2.7 The PMI SB3000 Parallel Diagnostic Screen	6-16
6.1.	2.8 The GV3000 Parallel Diagnostic Screen	6-17
61	2.9 The FP 3000 D-C Drive Diagnostic Screen	6-19

<u>6.1.2.</u>	0 The PMI SA3100 Diagnostics Screen	6-21
6.1.2.1	1 The AB1336 Drive Diagnostics Screen	6-24
<u>6.1.3</u>	Changing the Setpoint Value for a Section	6-26
<u>6.2</u> <u>The</u>	Section Screen	6-29
<u>6.3</u> <u>The</u>	SPAD (Speed and Draw) Screen	6-31
<u>6.3.1</u>	Selecting Sections for Calculation	6-32
<u>6.3.2</u>	Calculating Draws	6-33
<u>6.4</u> <u>Sun</u>	<u>ımary</u>	6-33
Chapter 7	Using The SIGMA NE Recipe System	7-1
7.1 Cha	pter Overview	7-1
7.2 Edi	ing Recipes	7-3
7.2.1	Browsing Recipe Elements	7-4
7.2.2	Browsing Stored Recipes	7-4
7.2.3	Editing an Existing Recipe or Entering a New Recipe	7-4
7.2.4	Editing Recipe Files	7-5
<u>7.3</u> <u>Mar</u>	naging Recipes	7-12
7.3.1	Preparing The Next Recipe To Run	7-13
<u>7.3.2</u>	Modifying "Next" Recipe Values Before Downloading	7-13
<u>7.3.3</u>	Downloading Recipes	7-14
<u>7.3.4</u>	Modifying Setpoint Values	7-15
<u>7.3.5</u>	Capturing Setpoint Values As a Recipe	7-16
<u>7.3.5</u> Chapter 8	Capturing Setpoint Values As a Recipe SIGMA NE Support	7-16
7.3.5 Chapter 8 <u>8.1</u> <u>Rec</u>	Capturing Setpoint Values As a Recipe SIGMA NE Support	7-16 8-1 8-1
7.3.5 Chapter 8 <u>8.1</u> Rec Appendix A	Capturing Setpoint Values As a Recipe SIGMA NE Support ommended Spares Troubleshooting With The Drive Diagnostic Screens	7-16 8-1 8-1 A-1
$\frac{7.3.5}{\text{Chapter 8}}$ $\frac{8.1}{\text{Appendix A}}$	Capturing Setpoint Values As a Recipe SIGMA NE Support ommended Spares Troubleshooting With The Drive Diagnostic Screens ubleshooting The SD 3000 and SD 3000 Regen Diagnostic Screens	7-16 8-1 8-1 A-1 A-2
$\frac{7.3.5}{\text{Chapter 8}}$ Chapter 8 $\frac{8.1}{\text{Rec}}$ Appendix A $\frac{A.1}{A.1.1}$ Tro	Capturing Setpoint Values As a Recipe SIGMA NE Support ommended Spares Troubleshooting With The Drive Diagnostic Screens ubleshooting The SD 3000 and SD 3000 Regen Diagnostic Screens Fault Boxes.	7-16 8-1 A-1 A-2 A-2 A-2
$\frac{7.3.5}{\text{Chapter 8}}$ Chapter 8 $\frac{8.1}{\text{Appendix A}}$ $\frac{A.1}{A.1.1}$ $A.1.2$	Capturing Setpoint Values As a Recipe SIGMA NE Support ommended Spares Troubleshooting With The Drive Diagnostic Screens ubleshooting The SD 3000 and SD 3000 Regen Diagnostic Screens <u>Fault Boxes</u> LED Lights	7-16 8-1 A-1 A-1 A-2 A-2 A-5
$\frac{7.3.5}{Chapter 8}$ $\frac{8.1}{Appendix A}$ $\frac{A.1}{A.1.1}$ $\frac{A.1.2}{A.1.3}$	Capturing Setpoint Values As a Recipe SIGMA NE Support ommended Spares Troubleshooting With The Drive Diagnostic Screens ubleshooting The SD 3000 and SD 3000 Regen Diagnostic Screens Fault Boxes LED Lights SCR Schematic.	7-16 8-1 A-1 A-1 A-2 A-2 A-5 A-7
$\frac{7.3.5}{\text{Chapter 8}}$ $\frac{8.1}{\text{Rec}}$ Appendix A $\frac{A.1}{A.1.2}$ $\frac{A.1.3}{A.2}$ Tro	Capturing Setpoint Values As a Recipe SIGMA NE Support ommended Spares Troubleshooting With The Drive Diagnostic Screens ableshooting The SD 3000 and SD 3000 Regen Diagnostic Screens Fault Boxes	7-16 8-1 A-1 A-1 A-2 A-2 A-5 A-7 A-8
$\frac{7.3.5}{Chapter 8}$ $\frac{8.1}{Appendix A}$ $\frac{A.1}{A.1.1}$ $\frac{A.1.2}{A.1.3}$ $\frac{A.2}{A.2}$ $\frac{Tro}{A.2.1}$	Capturing Setpoint Values As a Recipe SIGMA NE Support ommended Spares Troubleshooting With The Drive Diagnostic Screens ibleshooting The SD 3000 and SD 3000 Regen Diagnostic Screens Fault Boxes LED Lights SCR Schematic ibleshooting The SA 3000 Diagnostic Screen Fault Boxes	7-16 8-1 A-1 A-1 A-2 A-2 A-5 A-7 A-8 A-9
$\frac{7.3.5}{Chapter 8}$ $\frac{8.1}{Appendix A}$ $\frac{A.1}{A.1.1}$ $\frac{A.1.2}{A.1.3}$ $\frac{A.2}{A.2.1}$ $\frac{A.2.1}{A.2.2}$	Capturing Setpoint Values As a Recipe SIGMA NE Support ommended Spares Troubleshooting With The Drive Diagnostic Screens ubleshooting The SD 3000 and SD 3000 Regen Diagnostic Screens Fault Boxes LED Lights SCR Schematic	
$\frac{7.3.5}{Chapter 8}$ $\frac{8.1}{Appendix A}$ $\frac{A.1}{A.1.2}$ $\frac{A.1.3}{A.2}$ $\frac{A.2.1}{A.2.2}$ $\frac{A.2.3}{A.2.3}$	Capturing Setpoint Values As a Recipe SIGMA NE Support ommended Spares Troubleshooting With The Drive Diagnostic Screens ubleshooting The SD 3000 and SD 3000 Regen Diagnostic Screens Fault Boxes LED Lights SCR Schematic ubleshooting The SA 3000 Diagnostic Screen Fault Boxes LED Lights IGBT Schematic	7-16 8-1 A-1 A-1 A-2 A-2 A-2 A-5 A-7 A-8 A-9 A-13 A-15
$\frac{7.3.5}{Chapter 8}$ $\frac{8.1}{Appendix A}$ $\frac{A.1}{A.1.1}$ $\frac{A.1.2}{A.1.3}$ $\frac{A.2}{A.2}$ $\frac{A.2.1}{A.2.2}$ $\frac{A.2.3}{A.3}$ $\frac{A.3}{Tro}$	Capturing Setpoint Values As a Recipe SIGMA NE Support ommended Spares Troubleshooting With The Drive Diagnostic Screens ubleshooting The SD 3000 and SD 3000 Regen Diagnostic Screens Fault Boxes LED Lights SCR Schematic ubleshooting The SA 3000 Diagnostic Screen Fault Boxes LED Lights IGBT Schematic ubleshooting The SA 3000 Parallel A, B and C Diagnostic Screens	
$\frac{7.3.5}{Chapter 8}$ $\frac{8.1}{Appendix A}$ $\frac{A.1}{A.1.1}$ $\frac{A.1.1}{A.1.2}$ $\frac{A.1.3}{A.2}$ $\frac{A.2.1}{A.2.2}$ $\frac{A.2.3}{A.3}$ $\frac{A.3}{Tro}$	Capturing Setpoint Values As a Recipe SIGMA NE Support ommended Spares Troubleshooting With The Drive Diagnostic Screens ubleshooting The SD 3000 and SD 3000 Regen Diagnostic Screens <u>Fault Boxes</u> . <u>LED Lights</u> . <u>SCR Schematic</u> . <u>ableshooting The SA 3000 Diagnostic Screen</u> . <u>Fault Boxes</u> . <u>LED Lights</u> . <u>IGBT Schematic</u> . <u>ableshooting The SA 3000 Parallel A, B and C Diagnostic Screens</u> .	7-16 8-1 8-1 
$\begin{array}{r} 7.3.5 \\ \text{Chapter 8} \\ \underline{8.1} & \text{Rec} \\ \text{Appendix A} \\ \underline{A.1} & \text{Tro} \\ \underline{A.1.1} \\ \underline{A.1.2} \\ \underline{A.1.3} \\ \underline{A.2} & \text{Tro} \\ \underline{A.2.1} \\ \underline{A.2.2} \\ \underline{A.2.3} \\ \underline{A.3} & \text{Tro} \\ \underline{A.3.1} \\ \underline{A.3.2} \end{array}$	Capturing Setpoint Values As a Recipe SIGMA NE Support ommended Spares Troubleshooting With The Drive Diagnostic Screens ubleshooting The SD 3000 and SD 3000 Regen Diagnostic Screens Eault Boxes LED Lights SCR Schematic ubleshooting The SA 3000 Diagnostic Screen Fault Boxes LED Lights IGBT Schematic ubleshooting The SA 3000 Parallel A, B and C Diagnostic Screens Fault Boxes LED Lights	
$\begin{array}{r} 7.3.5\\ \text{Chapter 8}\\ \underline{8.1}  \underline{\text{Rec}}\\ \text{Appendix A}\\ \underline{A.1}  \underline{\text{Tro}}\\ \underline{A.1.1}\\ \underline{A.1.2}\\ \underline{A.1.3}\\ \underline{A.2}  \underline{\text{Tro}}\\ \underline{A.2.1}\\ \underline{A.2.3}\\ \underline{A.2.3}\\ \underline{A.3}  \underline{\text{Tro}}\\ \underline{A.3.1}\\ \underline{A.3.2}\\ \underline{A.3.3}\\ \end{array}$	Capturing Setpoint Values As a Recipe SIGMA NE Support ommended Spares Troubleshooting With The Drive Diagnostic Screens ubleshooting The SD 3000 and SD 3000 Regen Diagnostic Screens Fault Boxes LED Lights SCR Schematic ubleshooting The SA 3000 Diagnostic Screen Fault Boxes LED Lights IGBT Schematic ubleshooting The SA 3000 Parallel A, B and C Diagnostic Screens Fault Boxes LED Lights IGBT Schematic	
$\begin{array}{c} 7.3.5\\ \text{Chapter 8}\\ \underline{8.1}  \text{Rec}\\ \text{Appendix A}\\ \underline{A.1}  \text{Tro}\\ \underline{A.1.1}\\ \underline{A.1.2}\\ \underline{A.1.3}\\ \underline{A.2}  \text{Tro}\\ \underline{A.2.1}\\ \underline{A.2.2}\\ \underline{A.2.3}\\ \underline{A.3}  \text{Tro}\\ \underline{A.3.1}\\ \underline{A.3.2}\\ \underline{A.3.3}\\ \underline{A.4}  \text{Tro}\\ \end{array}$	Capturing Setpoint Values As a Recipe SIGMA NE Support ommended Spares Troubleshooting With The Drive Diagnostic Screens ubleshooting The SD 3000 and SD 3000 Regen Diagnostic Screens <u>Fault Boxes</u>	
$\begin{array}{c} \underline{7.3.5} \\ \text{Chapter 8} \\ \underline{8.1} & \underline{\text{Rec}} \\ \text{Appendix A} \\ \underline{A.1} & \underline{\text{Tro}} \\ \underline{A.1.1} \\ \underline{A.1.2} \\ \underline{A.1.3} \\ \underline{A.2} & \underline{\text{Tro}} \\ \underline{A.2.1} \\ \underline{A.2.2} \\ \underline{A.2.3} \\ \underline{A.2.3} \\ \underline{A.3} & \underline{\text{Tro}} \\ \underline{A.3.1} \\ \underline{A.3.2} \\ \underline{A.3.3} \\ \underline{A.4} & \underline{\text{Tro}} \\ \underline{A.4.1} \end{array}$	Capturing Setpoint Values As a Recipe SIGMA NE Support ommended Spares Troubleshooting With The Drive Diagnostic Screens ubleshooting The SD 3000 and SD 3000 Regen Diagnostic Screens Fault Boxes LED Lights SCR Schematic ibleshooting The SA 3000 Diagnostic Screen Fault Boxes LED Lights IGBT Schematic ibleshooting The SA 3000 Parallel A, B and C Diagnostic Screens Fault Boxes LED Lights	

<u>A.4.3</u>	IGBT Schematic	A-37
<u>A.5</u> Tro	publeshooting The SA 500 Diagnostic Screen	A-39
<u>A.5.1</u>	Fault Boxes	A-39
<u>A.5.2</u>	LED Lights	A-41
<u>A.6</u> <u>Tro</u>	publeshooting The GV 3000 A-C Drive Diagnostic Screens	A-43
<u>A.6.1</u>	Fault Boxes	A-43
<u>A.7</u> <u>Tro</u>	publeshooting The FP 3000 D-C Drive Diagnostic Screens	A-46
<u>A.7.1</u>	Status, Faults and Alarm Boxes	A-47
A.7.2	First Fault Text Message (FRST FLT%)	A-49
A.7.3	Stop Code Messages (STP CAUS%)	A-49
A.7.4	Recent Alarm (RCNT ALM%) Messages	A-49
<u>A.8</u> Tro	publeshooting The SA 3100 Diagnostic Screens	A-51
<u>A.8.1</u>	Fault Boxes	A-52
<u>A.8.2</u>	LED Lights	A-57
A.8.3	IGBT Schematic	A-60
A.9 Tro	publeshooting The AB1336 Drive Diagnostic Screens	A-61
A.9.1	Status, Fault or Warning Boxes.	A-63
	-	

# List of Figures For The SIGMA UOI/UPM NE Operator's Manual

Figure 1-1 Typical SIGMA NE Configuration	1-2
Figure 1-2 The Alarm/Fault Summary Screen	1-3
Figure 1-3 Event History Screen	1-3
Figure 1-4 The Historical Trend Screen	1-3
Figure 1-5 The Real-Time Trend Screen	1-3
Figure 1-6 The AB-1336 Diagnostics Screen	1-4
Figure 1-7 Line Run Permissives Summary screen	1-4
Figure 1-8 The Drive Overview Screen	1-5
Figure 1-9 The Section Control Screen	1-5
Figure 1-10 Recipe Manager Screen	1-6
Figure 1-11 The Recipe Editor Screen.	1-6
Figure 1-12 Process Overview	1-7
Figure 1-13 Tracking.	1-7
Figure 1-14 Rockwell Automation SIGMA NE UOI/UPM window with Setup popup box	1-11
Figure 1-15 Installation Welcome Popup	1-12
Figure 1-16 Registered User Popup Screen	1-13
Figure 1-17 Installation Information Popup Screen	1-14
Figure 1-18 SIGMA Server Name and IP Address Popup Screen	1-15
Figure 1-19 Creating SIGMA NE Folders and Icons Message Screen	1-16
Figure 1-20 SIGMA NE Setup Complete Popup.	1-17
Figure 1-21 Start and Stop Custom OCX Server Icons	1-17
Figure 1-22 SIGMA NE 32-Bit Applications Directory	1-18
Figure 1-23 Ping Command Example.	1-19
Figure 1-24 SIGMA NE UOI/UPM Title Screen	1-20
Figure 1-25 Drive Overview Screen	1-21
Figure 2-1 Drives Overview Screen	2-2
Figure 2-2 Alarm/Fault Summary Screen	2-2
Figure 2-3 Full Screen	2-3
Figure 2-4 Full Screen with Pop-Up Overlay.	2-3
Figure 2-5 Internal Keyboard	2-7
Figure 2-6 Internal Keyboard	2-8
Figure 2-7 Typical UPM Main Menu Bar	2-9
Figure 2-8 Accessing Other Screens From The Alarm/Fault Summary Screen Main Menu	2-10
Figure 2-9 Accessing Pop-Up Box from Drives Overview First Press Button	2-11
Figure 2-10 Accessing a Pop-Up Box from the Trending Screen's 1st Variable Button	2-11
Figure 3-1 The Trend Screen	3-3
Figure 3-2 The Channel Window	3-6

Figure 3-3 The Trend Screen with T1 and T2 slider bars	
Figure 3-4 The Memory Save As PopupWindow	
Figure 3-5 The Memory Load Window	
Figure 3-6 The Trigger Window	
Figure 4-1 The Go Snapshot Configuration Window	4-3
Figure 4-2 The Go Window	4-5
Figure 4-3 Capture Window	4-7
Figure 4-4 The Trigger Window	4-8
Figure 4-5 The Snapshot File Maintenance Screen	
Figure 4-6 The SIGMA Snapshot Export Utility Screen	4-14
Figure 5-1 The Alarm/Fault Summary Screen	5-4
Figure 5-2 Event History Screen	
Figure 5-3 The Event History Filter Setup Screen	5-9
Figure 5-4 The Event History Print Setup Window	
Figure 6-1 The Drive Overview Screen	
Figure 6-2 A Bar Chart Window.	
Figure 6-3 The Help Menu	
Figure 6-4 The Help Text	
Figure 6-5 The Note Window	
Figure 6-6 The PMI SD3000 Diagnostics Screen	
Figure 6-7 The SD3000 Regen Diagnostics Screen	
Figure 6-8 The SA3000 Diagnostics Screen	
Figure 6-9 The SA3000 Parallel Diagnostics Screen	
Figure 6-10 The SA500 Diagnostics Screen	
Figure 6-11 The SB3000 Parallel Diagnostics Screen	
Figure 6-12 The GV3000 A-C Drive Diagnostics Screen	
Figure 6-13 The FP3000 D-C Drive Diagnostics Screen	
Figure 6-14 SA3100 Diagnostics Screen	
Figure 6-15 The AB1336 Diagnostics Screen	
Figure 6-16 A Section Control Window with a Slider Bar	
Figure 6-17 The Section Screen	
Figure 6-18 The SPAD (Speed and Draw) Screen	
Figure 7-1 Recipe Editor Screen	
Figure 7-2 Pop-Up Keyboard	
Figure 7-3 Pop-Up Keypad	
Figure 7-4 Pop-Up Edit Data Message Box	
Figure 7-5 Edit Function and "Load Next" Buttons	
Figure 7-6 Copy Recipe Box	
Figure 7-7 Save Recipe (Overwrite) Box	
Figure 7-8 Save Recipe (Add) Box	

Figure 7-9 Delete Recipe Box.	7-8
Figure 7-10 Print Recipes Pop-Up Window.	7-9
Figure 7-11 Export/Import Files	7-10
Figure 7-12 "Load Next" Pop-Up Window	7-11
Figure 7-13 Recipe Manager	7-12
Figure 7-14 "Load Next" Pop-Up Window	7-13
Figure 7-15 Pop-Up Keypad	7-13
Figure 7-16 Download Pop-Up Window.	7-14
Figure 7-17 Pop-Up Keypad	7-15
Figure 7-18 Pop-Up Capture Recipe Window	7-16
Figure 7-19 Pop-Up Keyboard	7-16
Figure 7-20 Add Recipe Confirmation Pop-Up Box	7-17
Figure 7-21 Overwrite Recipe Confirmation Pop-Up Box	7-17
Figure A-1 The SD3000 Diagnostic Screen	A-2
Figure A-2 SD3000 Regen Diagnostic Screen	A-2
Figure A-3 Diagnostics Screen When No PMI Communication Occurs	A-4
Figure A-4 The A3000 Diagnostic Screen	A-8
Figure A-5 The SA3000 Parallel 3 Diagnostic Screen	A-16
Figure A-6 The SB3000 Parallel 3 Diagnostic Screen	A-28
Figure A-7 The SA500 Diagnostic Screen	A-39
Figure A-8 The GV3000 A-C Drive Diagnostic Screen	A-43
Figure A-9 The FP3000 D-C Drive Diagnostic Screen	A-46
Figure A-10 SA3100 Diagnostic Screen	A-51
Figure A-11 AB1336 Diagnostics Screen	A-61
<b>C</b>	

# Chapter 1

# Introducing the SIGMA NE Universal Operator Interface and the SIGMA NE Universal Process Monitor

This chapter introduces SIGMA NE Universal Operator Interface (UOI) and Universal Process Monitor (UPM) systems and the hardware required for these products.

This chapter describes specifically:

- a typical SIGMA NE configuration
- various UPM/UOI screens
- SIGMA NE Operator Interface Warnings and Responsibilities
- software requirements
- hardware requirements
- SIGMA NE setup
- SIGMA NE software installation

# About SIGMA NE UOI/UPM

The SIGMA NE <u>Universal Operator Interface and Universal Process Monitor Systems are</u> operator interfaces which integrates data acquisition, supervisory control and information management into a comprehensive Client/Server package. SIGMA Server monitors the drive control systems through a ControlNet Interface card using the ControlNet network and distributes the data over an Ethernet network to SIGMA Clients. Figure 1-1 shows a typical SIGMA NE UOI/UPM configuration.



Figure 1-1 Typical SIGMA NE Configuration

Universal Process Monitor software simplifies maintenance and troubleshooting by providing:

Historical Recording of Alarms, Faults, and Operator Actions 

			SIGMA U	niversal O	perator Interfac	e		
<u>Overview!</u>	Section!	S <u>P</u> AD!	<u>T</u> rend!	<u>A</u> larm/Flt	<u>S</u> napshot			
		Ala	arm/F	ault S	ummary		07-12-94	08:48
						Ackno	wledge	
Exception T	'ime / Mes	sage	1	Гуре	Cle	ar or Ackno	wledge Tim	ie
Jul 07, 1994 08: BR_COM_WRN	04:54 AM -	A PMLC	LARM_HIC	SH A TION WARNI	Acknow NG	ledged Jul 12,	, 1994 08:47:5	5 AM 🛨
Jul 07, 1994-08: BR_CLK_WRN_	84:54 AM	CLOC	NLARM_HIC K SYNC WA	SH ARNING	Acknow	ledged Jul 12,	, 1994 08:47:5	S AM
Jul 07, 1994-08: BR_RAL_WRN	84:54 AM	RAIL	LARM_HIC	SH ATION WARNI	Acknow	ledged Jul 12,	, 1994 08:47:5	S AM
Jul 07, 1994-08: BR FAN WRN	04:54 AM	4 PMLE4	ALARM_HIC	SH ARNING	Acknow	ledged Jul 12,	, 1994 08:47:50	S AM
Jul 07, 1994 08: BR OT WRN	04:54 AM	4 OVER 1	LARM_HIC	SH IRE WARNING	Acknow	ledged Jul 12,	, 1994 08:47:50	S AM
Jul 07, 1994 08: BR SHR WRN	04:54 AM	LOAD	ALARM_HIC	SH ZARNING	Acknow	ledged Jul 12,	, 1994 08:47:50	S AM
Jul 07, 1994 08: BR RIL WRN	04:54 AM	REFERE	LARM_HIC	SH IIT WARNING	Acknow	ledged Jul 12,	, 1994 08:47:50	S AM
Jul 07, 1994-08: BR VR WRN	04:54 AM	VOLTA	ALARM_HIC	SH WARNING	Acknow	ledged Jul 12,	, 1994 08:47:5	S AM
Jul 07, 1994-08: BR UV WRN	84:54 AM	A DC BUS	LARM_HIC	SH DL TAGE WARN	Acknow	ledged Jul 12,	, 1994 08:47:50	S AM
Jul 07, 1994-08: BR OV WRN	84:54 AM	A DC BUS	ALARM_HIC	SH L TAGE WARNI	Acknow	ledged Jul 12,	, 1994 08:47:5	S AM
Jul 87, 1994 88: BR COM FLT	04:54 AM	COMM	FAULT_HIG	H N LOSS FAULT	Acknow	ledged Jul 12,	, 1994 88:47:5	S AM
Jul 07, 1994-08: BR_RUN_FLT_	04:54 AM	UDC RU	FAULT_HIG	H	Acknow	ledged Jul 12,	, 1994 08:47:5	I AM
<b>T</b> .	4.0	. / 1 1	A 1		/T 1. (	1	(	2

Overview! Section!	SPAD! Trend! Alarm/Fit Snapshot	
	Event History	07-12-94 08:50
Print Cancel	Print No Active Filter	Setup <u>F</u> ilter
Exception Time / Messa	ge Type Clear Time	Acknowledge Time
Jul 07, 1994-08:04:54 AM BR_COM_WRN_	ALARM_HIGH PMI COMMUNICATION WARNING	Jul 12, U8:47:56 AM
Jul 07, 1994-08:04:54 AM BR_CLK_WRN_	ALARM_HIGH CLOCK SYNC WARNING	Jul 12, 08:47:56 AM
Jul 07, 1994-08:04:54 AM BR_RAL_WRN_	ALARM_HIGH RAIL COMMUNICATION WARNING	Jul 12, 08:47:56 AM
Jul 07, 1994-08:04:54 AM BR_FAN_WRN_	ALARM_HIGH PMI FAN LOSS WARNING	Jul 12, 08:47:56 AM
Jul 07, 1994 08:04:54 AM BR_OT_WRN	ALARM_HIGH OVER TEMPERATURE WARNING	Jul 12, 08:47:56 AM
Jul 07, 1994-08:04:54 AM BR_SHR_WRN_	ALARM_HIGH LOAD SHARING WARNING	Jul 12, 08:47:56 AM
Jul 07, 1994-08:04:54 AM BR_RIL_WRN_	ALARM_HIGH REFERENCE IN LIMIT WARNING	Jul 12, 08:47:56 AM
Jul 07, 1994_08:04:54 AM BR_VR_WRN_	ALARM_HIGH VOLTAGE RIPPLE WARNING	Jul 12, 08:47:56 AM
Jul 07, 1994_08:04:54 AM BR_UV_WRN_	ALARM_HIGH DC BUS UNDER VOLTAGE WARNING	Jul 12, 08:47:56 AM
Jul 07, 1994-08:04:54 AM BR_OV_WRN_	ALARM_HIGH DC BUS OVER VOLTAGE WARNING	Jul 12, 08:47:56 AM
Jul 07, 1994-08:04:54 AM BR_COM_FLT_	FAULT_HIGH COMMUNICATION LOSS FAULT	Jul 12, 08:47:56 AM
Jul 07, 1994_08:04:54 AM Br_RUN_FLT_	FAULT_HIGH UDC RUN FAULT	Jul 12, 08:47:56 AM

MA Universal Operator Interfac

Figure 1-2 The Alarm/Fault Summary Screen

Figure 1-3 Event History Screen

- [Trend Screen] ess Me - I Trend So Alm/Fit Snapshot Print Help Curr. Val. Units Description 29432.00 HOURS Bed Drive Fized Elap Trigger! Interva Alm/Fit Print Return! <u>T</u>rigger! <u>I</u>nterval Return ta T = 00:01:0 -436.00 26-July-94 13:11:15 26-July-94 12:56:01 32496.00 324.96 1190.33 -42.64 F ELAPSED HR 31960.00 F\_ELAPSED\_HR 
 CL\_DIA\_X100
 319.60

 NORMAN
 319.60

 C\_SPLIT\_SET\_X
 47.01

 44
 26-Jul-1594
 1301:24
 -4.36 -15.98 -28.75 Interval: 5 Min PMI Arm Curr Fdbk unfltrd Couch Torque Split Setpoin Interval: 5 Min IX Liv Ţ Jul 26 13:01:24 Jul 26 13:00:24 Jul 26 12:59:24 Jul 26 12:58:24 Jul 26 12:56:24 Jul 26 12:57:24 Jul 26 12:55:50 Jul 26 12:54:50 Jul 26 12:53:50 Jul 26 12:52:50 Jul 26 12:51:50 Figure 1-4 The Historical Trend Screen

Figure 1-5 The Real-Time Trend Screen

UPM software may be used alone or be included as part of UOI software.

Real-Time and Historical Trending 

UOI software provides diagnostics and control by providing:

Power Module screens that provide a remote view of drive indicator lights, alarm/fault status, and power device integrity



Figure 1-6 The AB-1336 Diagnostics Screen

Line Run Permissives screens that lists all drives, auxilliary and other associated equipment required to start the line or process



Figure 1-7 Line Run Permissives Summary screen

Drive Overview screens that display each drives load, speed, and status in either digital or bar-chart format

	SIGMA Universal Operator Interface					
Overview! Section! SPAD!	Irend! A	larm/Fit Snap:	shot			
				07-12-	94 07:49	
Entry Speed 0.0 FPM	Process S	ipeed 0.00	FPM Delive	ry Speed	0.0 FPM	
Section	Status	Setpoint	Speed	Tension	Load	
Payoff 🛨	Alarm	0.0 RPM	0.0		0	
Top Work Roll	Warning	0.0	0.0	0.0	0	
Bottom Work Roll	JOG	0.0 RPM	0.0	0.0	0	
Coiling Reel	READY	0.0	0.0	0.0	0	
OS Screws	RUN	0.0	0.0	0.0	0	
DS Screws	READY	0.0	0.0	0.0	0	
Tilter	WARNING		0.0	0.0	0	
Entry Coil Car	ALARM	0.0	0.0			
Coil Prep Shear	JOG			0.0		
Entry Chain Conv +				0.0		

Figure 1-8 The Drive Overview Screen

 Section Control screens that let the operator start/stop, jog, thread and adjust individual drive operating setpoints

5	SIGMA Universal Operator Interf	ace
Overview! Section! SPAD!	Trend! Alarm/Fit Snapshot	
		07-12-94 07:55
Entry Speed 0.0 FPM	Process Speed 0.00 FPM	Delivery Speed 0.0 FPM
	Section Control Panel	
•		•
Payoff	Top Work Roll	Bottom Work Roll
Actual 0 Alarm See 0.00 Composition of the second of the	Actual 0.0 Warning Set 0.0 Speed Increase Decrease Terms	Actual 0.0 READY Set 0.0 Speed RUN CRAWL STOP

Figure 1-9 The Section Control Screen

Recipe Manager screen that lets the operator view, modify, enter or capture setpoints for the production process

🗝 S	IGMA Recipe Sys	tem - [Recipe Mana	ger]	<b>▼</b>   <b>≑</b>					
Exit! <u>M</u> anager! <u>E</u> ditor!									
Recipe Manager Download									
			. ↓						
Controlled Variable		Setpoint (unsaved)	Preset	Next News Print					
BEL BAIE SPEED	FPM 🕇			988					
PRESS DRAW	FPM			20					
1st Dryer	FPM	0		18					
3RD Dryer Draw	FPM			20					
Size Press Top Draw	FPM			12					
4th Dryer Draw	FPM	0		17					
4TH Dryer Wet Draw	FPM			11					
Calender Brum Braw	FPM			20					
Reel Drum Draw	FPM			30					
Reel Speed	FPM 🔸	0		1037					

Figure 1-10 Recipe Manager Screen

Recipe Editor screen that lets the operator create, store and modify operating recipes which are used by the Recipe Manager to control the production process

	SIGMA Reci	pe S	System - [Recip	e Editor]		<b>• \$</b>		
E <u>×</u> it! <u>M</u> anager! <u>E</u> ditor!								
	Recipe Editor							
Edit Functions :								
Default ! Copy Cl	ear! S	ave	Delete	Print	File L	oad Next		
Element.			Edit Field	•		•		
clement			li i i	magazine	News Print	naner		
Recipe Name		_						
BEL BAIE SPEED	FPM	+	2000	1000	900	1100		
PRESS DRAW	FPM	H	28	9	20	6		
1st Dryer	FPM		15	7	18	7		
3RD Dryer Draw	FPM		12	8	20	8		
Size Press Top Draw	FPM		10	11	12	9		
4th Dryer Draw	FPM		18	12	17	22		
4TH Dryer Wet Draw	FPM		16	10	11	11		
Calender Drum Draw	FPM		28	8	20	8		
Reel Drum Draw	FPM	1	28	20	30	91		
Reel Speed	FPM	·	2123	1075	1037	1251		

Figure 1-11 The Recipe Editor Screen

Also the UOI system software may provide application-specific screens for:

- displaying a process overview and its various parameters
- tracking a product's position as it passes through the production line.



Figure 1-12 Process Overview

	📼 SIGMA Universal Operator Interface - [ Weld Tracking Screen ] 🗾 💌 🖨							▼ \$		
<u>G</u> eneral	<u>R</u> ecipe	<u>T</u> rend!	<u>A</u> larm/Flt	Au⊻ilia	y Re <u>p</u>	ort	<u>S</u> napshot	<u>H</u> elp	<u>Q</u> uit!	
WELD TRACKING										
			<b></b>	1 RD4	56009	5	RD455690	9	RD455223	
		ffff	iiii I	2 RD4	56010	6	RD456771	10	RD452975	
Time to	0.00	- 100	IIII I	3 RD4	55763	7	RD459908	11	RD456016	
Empty	0.00	- m		4 RD4	57242	8	RD456084	12	RD456442	
Empty 47 % Feet on POR Feet on POR 636 1 0 7 PM 0 FPM 0 FPM										
0							0		#10 0 0 0	)#2

Figure 1-13 Tracking

### About SIGMA NE Operator Interface Design

#### WARNING

THE OPERATOR INTERFACE MAY BE USED TO PERFORM CRITICAL FUNCTIONS SUCH AS STOPPING THE CONTROLLED EQUIPMENT. THE USER MUST DESIGN THE OPERATOR INTERFACE TO ENSURE THAT THE OPERATOR CAN RECOGNIZE AND ACCESS CRITICAL FUNCTIONS QUICKLY. FAILURE TO OBSERVE THIS PRECAUTION COULD RESULT IN BODILY INJURY.

#### WARNING

THE USER MUST PROVIDE AN EXTERNAL, HARDWIRED EMERGENCY STOP CIRCUIT THAT WILL DISABLE THE SYSTEM IN CASE OF IMPROPER OPERATION. UNCONTROLLED MACHINE OPERATION MAY RESULT IF THIS IS NOT DONE. FAILURE TO OBSERVE THIS PRECAUTION COULD RESULT IN BODILY INJURY.

The SIGMA NE Universal Operator Interface (UOI) permits an operator to control the operation of a wide variety of driven equipment through a personal computer. The personal computer can be located anywhere on ControlNet network.

The specification, location and function of the SIGMA NE Universal Operator Interface, emergency disconnects, guarding and other operating and safety devices must be determined by the user based on the user's knowledge of the design and operation of the driven equipment. The user must also ensure that the specification, location and function of these devices conforms to applicable safety codes. These items are not determined by and are not the responsibility of Rockwell Automation.

#### Software Requirements

- SIGMA Server:
  - iRMX Runtime License
  - MS/DOS version 6.0 or later (Don't use double space.)
  - SIGMA Kernel data acquisition system
- SIGMA Client:
  - Microsoft Windows 2000
  - SIGMA Client software

# Hardware Requirements

Because of hardware and software restrictions on the SIGMA Client/Server and its components, the computers must be purchased by Rockwell Automation to insure hardware compatibility and functionality.

# Setting Up a SIGMA Client

The SIGMA Clients and SIGMA Server use the TCP/IP protocol to send messages to one another via EtherNet. The Ethernet cables are either coaxial, twisted pair, or fiber optic and usually run through a central hub using star topology. Connect the SIGMA Client to the EtherNet network using the appropriate connector. Note that the EtherNet cabling is the responsibility of the user and should be verified before making the SIGMA NE connections (see section 1.7.4 Verifying SIGMA Client Communication with SIGMA Server).

# Setting Up a SIGMA Server

As discussed in the previous section, the SIGMA Server communicates with SIGMA Clients over Ethernet. Connect the SIGMA Server to the Ethernet network. The SIGMA Server also communicates directly to ControlNet using the ControlNet interface card (or optionally DSCNET using the PC Link card). Connect the SIGMA Server to the ControlNet network using the standard ControlNet BNC connectors.

# Installing SIGMA Client Software

This chapter describes the installation and start up of SIGMA client software.

#### **Client Installation Procedure**

The complete installation process for SIGMA NE is relatively easy, provided all of the tools and information needed are available. Each installation step is provided here along with the information needed to make the procedures run smoothly and correctly.

#### Summarized List of the Steps Taken during Client Installation:

- 1. Install appropriate Windows platform (Windows 2000)
- 2. Install SIGMA NE Installation CD
- 3. Verify SIGMA Client Communication with the SIGMA Server
- 4. Start a SIGMA Client Application

#### Installing Appropriate Windows Operating System (Windows 2000)

Install Microsoft Windows 2000 on the primary partition drive according to the appropriate Windows documentation. At **Setup Options** pop-up, choose "Typical". When selecting **Network Protocols**, choose "TCP/IP Protocol". The installer then needs to know the I.P. address and host name of each SIGMA NE client and server.

#### Using the SIGMA NE Installation CD

The SIGMA NE Installation CD is used along with a SIGMA NE License floppy disk to load SIGMA NE software onto a SIGMA client.

Available SIGMA Client application types are:

- SIGMA NE 32 bit UPM Systems
- SIGMA NE 32 bit UOI Systems

All the license information for the system is read from the floppy. The SIGMA NE License file ultimately specifies the components that are to be installed on the system. The SIGMA NE License file should NOT be changed in any way. Changing the file renders the license unusable.

For example, To install SIGMA NE 32 bit UOI client software:

- 1. Load the SIGMA NE License floppy disk into the floppy drive.
- 2. Load the SIGMA NE Installation CD into the CD-ROM drive.
- 3. At the Run prompt in Windows 2000, type <drive>:\setup.exe

The screen displays the Rockwell Automation SIGMA NE UOI/UPM window with the following Setup popup box:



Figure 1-14 Rockwell Automation SIGMA NE UOI/UPM window with Setup popup box



The screen then displays the installation Welcome popup screen:

Figure 1-15 Installation Welcome Popup

- 4. Read the installation Welcome popup screen and click the <u>Next</u> button to continue with setup.
- 5. After reading and accepting the license agreement, click the Yes button to continue.

The next screen (see Figure 1-16) displays the **Registered user** popup screen that lists the optional software components (development configuration editors, SLC Database Editor and data monitoring modules with the amount of disk space that each utility occupies) to be installed on a designated "development" machine.

Make sure the components that you want to install have a check mark in the box along side of them. To find out what each utility does, click the component and the **Description** box will describe that component. At the bottom of the **Registered user** popup, the total disk **space required** for the selected components and the disk **space available** is displayed.



Figure 1-16 Registered User Popup Screen

6. When you have selected the components that you want to install, click the <u>N</u>ext button.

The **Installation Information** popup screen describing the current setting for User Information, Host System Information, and Installation Specifics is displayed.

Use the Page down button  $[\mathbf{\nabla}]$  to review the current settings of your SIGMA Client system. If you want to review or change any of the settings, click the  $\leq \underline{Back}$  button.



Figure 1-17 Installation Information Popup Screen

7. If you are satisfied with the settings, Click the <u>Next</u>> button to display the SIGMA Server and IP address popup.

The screen displays the SIGMA Server name and IP address popup. If the SIGMA Server name and/or IP address is not correct, enter the corect name and/or IP address of the SIGMA Server that this particular SIGMA Client is going to be connected to.

SIGMA UOI/UPM Setup				
32-bit Clien	t - Standan SIGMA Server name and	r <mark>d UC</mark> I IP address	)I Setup	X
		Enter the na particular SI NOTE: Thes C:WMNNT\S Server:	Ine and IP address of the S GMA Client is going to be of e settings can be changed ystem32/Drivers/Etc/Hosts 1 sigserv 161.153.60.170	IGMA Server that this onnected to. later by editing the ile.
			< <u>B</u> ack <u>N</u> ext	t > Cancel

Figure 1-18 SIGMA Server Name and IP Address Popup Screen

8. After verifying that the correct Server name and IP address are specified, click the <u>Next</u>> button.

The system starts creating SIGMA NE folders and icons (see Figure 1-19).



Figure 1-19 Creating SIGMA NE Folders and Icons Message Screen

When the installation of files is complete, the SIGMA NE Setup Complete popup is displayed. This popup asks if you want to restart the computer now or later. **Note:** It is recommended that you restart your computer before attempting to execute the installed programs.

#### Figure 1-20 SIGMA NE Setup Complete Popup



9. Click the **Finish** button to complete the setup.

The SIGMA NE 32-Bit system creates two icons (Start the Custom OCX Server and Stop the Custom OCX Server) and places them on your Windows desktop. Figures 1-21 shows these icons.



Figure 1-21 Start and Stop Custom OCX Server Icons

Also the system creates icons for each selected SIGMA NE component and places it in the open SIGMA NE Applications directory on the Windows desktop. To start a designated SIGMA NE component utility, double-click its icon.

Eile Edit Vi	plications	
Dverview Configurator Sigma UnInstall	Permissive Configurator	Recipe Configurator
SLC Database Editor 8 object(s)	Snapshot Viewer	3.60KB

Figure 1-22 SIGMA NE 32-Bit Applications Directory

#### Verifying SIGMA Client Communication With SIGMA Server

Use the ping command to verify availability of the SIGMA Server on the network. The ping utility uses the Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) echo request and echo reply packets to determine whether a particular IP system on a network is functional. The ping utility is useful for diagnosing IP network or router failures

Use the ping utility to test both the computer name and the IP address of the computer. If the IP address is verified but the computer name is not, there may be a name resolution problem. In this case, be sure that the computer name you are querying is in either the local HOSTS file (C:\WINNT\SYSTEM32\DRIVERS\ETC\HOSTS) or in the DNS database.

**Ping Command Example:** A 32-bit SIGMA client pings its SIGMA server with name "sigserv" and IP address "161.153.60.170":

Ping Command at DOS	C:\>ping sigserv
prompt:	
Expected Server Reply	Pinging sigserv [161.153.60.170] with 32 bytes of data
	Reply from 161.153.60.170: bytes=32 time=101ms TTL=243

#### C:\>ping sigserv

#### Pinging sigserv [161.153.60.170] with 32 bytes of data:

Reply from 161.153.60.170: bytes=32 time<10ms TTL=255 C:\>-

Figure 1-23 Ping Command Example

# **SIGMA Client Quick Start**

To start the following SIGMA Client Applications:

SIGMA Client Application	Click Icon
32-Bit SIGMA NE UPM Client	Sigma UPM
32-Bit SIGMA NE UOI Client	Sigma UOI

#### **Example:** To start a 32 bit SIGMA UOI client:

If you had been running a UOI application previously and had not clicked Stop the Custom OCX Server icon after you had Quit the SIGMA NE UOI application, click Stop the Custom OCX Server icon before you click Start the Custom OCX Server icon.	Start the Stop the Custom O
1. Click the 32 Bit <b>SIGMA UOI</b> icon Sigma UOI	The main SIGMA NE UOI/UPM Title screen is displayed.
	Figure 1-24 SIGMA NE UOI/UPM Title Screen

SIGMA NE UOI/UPM Title screen.	The initial screen (for example: standard Drive Overview screen) is displayed:					
	Automolies	Entry Section Drives 09-24-98				
		Status Setpoint Speed Current Lu				Load
	No. 1 Fayou neer	Not Ray	000.0	00	000	000
	No. 2 Payoff Reel	Not Bay	000.0	00	000	000
	No. 2 Flattener	Not Rdy	000.0 MPM	00	000	000
	No. 2 Pinch Roll	Not Taly	000.0	00	000	000
	No. 1 Deidle Roll No. 1	Not Pody	000.0 MPM	00	000	000
	No. 1 Bridle Roll No. 2	Kot Rdy	000.0 MPM	_ <u>90</u>	000	000
	Entry Looper Car	Not Bdy	000.0 MPM	00	000	000
	Figure 1-2.	5 Driv	e Overv	view Sc	reen	
	Note: This initial screen varies depending the specific application.					

# To Restart 32-Bit SIGMA Clients, if The SIGMA Server Shuts Down:

<ol> <li>Click the Stop Custom OCX Server icon on the Windows desktop.</li> </ol>	Stop the Custom O Stop Custom OCX Server Icon
2. Click the Close Button of the SIGMA TCPIP Server.	Signa 167P Server      LOG     Fast Template     Read Templat
3. Re-boot the SIGMA Server.	
4. Re-start the SIGMA Clients.	

#### Installing SIGMA Server Software

SIGMA Server software installation is beyond the scope of the average user and therefore is not covered in this manual. If there is a need to install SIGMA Server software, contact your local Rockwell Drive Solution Center for assistance.

#### Starting a SIGMA Server

Rebooting the server starts MSDOS. Then the user may specify how the machine starts (i.e., with SIGMA or No SIGMA) when booting the machine. These menu options will appear:

- 1. Start SIGMA
- 2. Do not start SIGMA
- 3. Backup Prior SIGMA and AMXLIX Directories
- 4. Restore a Prior Backup

If no response within 10 seconds, SIGMA automatically starts.

#### Changing the SIGMA Server IP Address

If the SIGMA Server IP address changes after installation, change the current IP address to the new IP address in the file c:\rmx386\config\tcp.ini on the SIGMA Server. This is also where IP mask and routing changes can be made. On the SIGMA Client, the file c:\winnt\system32\drivers\etc\hosts will need to be edited to reflect the change to the SIGMA Server IP address as well. The IP address change will take effect the next time the SIGMA Server is rebooted.

1.1	About SIGMA NE UOI/UPM	14
1.2	About SIGMA NE Operator Interface Design	20
1.3	Software Requirements	21
1.4	Hardware Requirements	21
1.5	Setting Up a SIGMA Client	21
1.6	Setting Up a SIGMA Server	21
1.7	Installing SIGMA Client Software	21
1.7.1	Client Installation Procedure	22
1.7.2	2 Installing Appropriate Windows Operating System (Windows 2000)	22
1.7.3	3 Using the SIGMA NE Installation CD	22
1.7.4	Verifying SIGMA Client Communication With SIGMA Server	31
1.7.5	5 SIGMA Client Quick Start	32
1.8	Installing SIGMA Server Software	34
1.8.1	Starting a SIGMA Server	34
1.8.2	2 Changing the SIGMA Server IP Address	34
Figure 1-	-1 Typical SIGMA NE Configuration	14
Figure 1-	-2 The Alarm/Fault Summary Screen	15
Figure 1-	-3 Event History Screen	15
Figure 1-	-4 The Historical Trend Screen	15
Figure 1-	-5 The Real-Time Trend Screen	15
Figure 1-	-6 The AB-1336 Diagnostics Screen	16
Figure 1-	-7 Line Run Permissives Summary screen	16
Figure 1-	-8 The Drive Overview Screen	17
Figure 1-	-9 The Section Control Screen	17
Figure 1-	-10 Recipe Manager Screen	18
Figure 1-	-11 The Recipe Editor Screen	18
Figure 1-	-12 Process Overview	19
Figure 1-	-13 Tracking	19
Figure 1-	-14 Rockwell Automation SIGMA NE UOI/UPM window with Setup popup box	23
Figure 1-	-15 Installation Welcome Popup	24
Figure 1-	-16 Registered User Popup Screen	25
Figure 1-	-17 Installation Information Popup Screen	26
Figure 1-	-18 SIGMA Server Name and IP Address Popup Screen	27
Figure 1-	-19 Creating SIGMA NE Folders and Icons Message Screen	28
Figure 1-	-20 SIGMA NE Setup Complete Popup	29
Figure 1-	-21 Start and Stop Custom OCX Server Icons	29
Figure 1-	-22 SIGMA NE 32-Bit Applications Directory	30
Figure 1-	-23 Ping Command Example	31
Figure 1-	-24 SIGMA NE UOI/UPM Title Screen	32
Figure 1-	-25 Drive Overview Screen	33

# Chapter 2

# **UOI/UPM Operation**

# Overview

This chapter describes SIGMA NE Universal Operator Interface (UOI) and Universal Process Monitor (UPM) operation. This chapter describes:

- UOI/UPM Startup
- Types of Screens
- Describing Screen Objects
- Accessing Screens
- Exception Handling

Since each UOI system, which usually includes the standard UPM screens, varies with respect to the application it is monitoring and controlling, the initial screen and elements of the menu will vary.
# UOI/UPM Start-Up

To start the SIGMA NE UOI or UPM:

Double click the appropriate SIGMA UOI or	The first screen of the system is then displayed.
UPM Icon.	For many UOI applications, the Drives Overview Screen (see Figure 2-1) is initially displayed. Section SPADI Brokel Irendi Alm/Fit Beport Snapshot Help Quitt Overview Section Status Setpoint Speed Wire Turning Ready O FFM 502.11 First Press Ready O FFM 502.19 Second Press Ready O FFM 502.19 Second Press Second Pres Second Press Second Press Second Pres Second Pres Second Pr
	Third Press         Immining
	For a UPM, the Alarm/Fault Screen (see Figure 2-2) initially is displayed. SIGMA Universal Operator Interface - [Alarm/Fault Summary] Irendl & MyFit Snapshot Quit
	Acknowledge           Exception Time / Message         Type         Clear or Acknowledge Time           Det 22, 193 112203 AM         Biol FAUL         Biol FAUL           Mir262         Sinp Break         Cov FAUL         Clear or Acknowledge Time           Det 22, 193 112203 AM         Cov FAUL         Clear of Acknowledge Oct 22, 193 1125:12 AM           Mir262         Guard Open         Cov FAUL         Clear of Acknowledge Oct 22, 193 112:512 AM           Oct 22, 193 112:203 AM         LOW ALARM         Acknowledged Oct 22, 193 112:512 AM           MTR ARFLOW WRNG         Motor Air Flow         Acknowledged Oct 22, 193 112:512 AM           Oct 22, 193 111:853 AM         HiGH ALARM         Acknowledged Oct 22, 193 112:512 AM           WO OVERLEW         Motor Air Flow         Acknowledged Oct 22, 193 112:512 AM           WO OverLevel         HiGH ALARM         Acknowledged Oct 22, 193 112:512 AM           Oct 22, 193 111:813 AM         HIGH ALARM         Acknowledged Oct 22, 193 112:512 AM           WO OverLevel         Yorkaul Cover Temp         Acknowledged Oct 22, 193 112:512 AM           Doct 22, 193 11:1:613 AM         HIGH FAIL ALARM         Acknowledged Oct 22, 193 112:512 AM           Doct 22, 193 11:1:613 AM         HIGH FAIL ALARM         Acknowledged Oct 22, 193 112:512 AM
	Figure 2-2 Alarm/Fault Summary Screen

# **Types Of Screens**

Screens can occupy the entire display or popup and overlay only a portion of the display. Figure 2-3 and Figure 2-4 show examples of a full screen and a popup screen.

SIGMA Universal Ope	erator Interface - [ Overview Screen ]	💌 🗢 🦳 SIGMA Universal Operator Interlace –   Overview Screen J 🔍 🐑
<u>General Recipe</u> <u>Irend!</u> <u>Alarm/Flt</u>	Auxiliary Report Snapshot Help Quit!	Overview! Section! SPAD! Broke! Trend! Alm/Fit Report Snapshot Help Quit!
	07-07-	5 10:39 D7-07-95 13:34
Entry Speed: <b>0</b> <sub>FPM</sub> Proces	ss Speed: 0 <sub>FPM</sub> Delivery Speed:	0 FPM Machine Speed: 495.80 Product Code: 42J
Section Status	s Setpoint Speed Tension	Load Section Status w Load
#1 Payoff Reel 🔹 Ready	480 FPM 503.36	51.34 Wire luming 2 Ready 55.31
#1 Top Conveyor Ready	/ 0 FPM 501.63	54.83 First Press Ready 44.12
#1 Bottom Conveyor	g 0 FPM 495.96	52.14 Second Press First Press
#2 Payoff Reel Ready	7 0 FPM 500.71 21.37	50.34 Third Press Kunning Actual O Books
#2 Top Conveyor Alarme	d 0 FPM 499.85	52.92 First Dryer Alarmed Set O Speed
#2 Bottom Conveyor Ready	/ 0 FPM 502.40	51.26 Second Dryer Ready
#1 Bridle Ready	/ 0 FPM 498.71	53.59 Size Press Top
#2 Bridle Ready	0 FPM 502.51	49.67 Size Press Uotiam
#1 Entry Looper	d 0 FPM 500.48 20.39	48.01 Third Dryer Ready Crawl
Furnace Entry Dancer Roll 😱 🛛 Ready	/ 0 FPM 503.13	48.42 Calender Ready Decrease Jog Ewd
	21.04	
Figure 2-3 Full Scre	een	
8		
		Return
		Figure 2-4 Full Screen with Pop-Up Overlay

Typical screens for the SIGMA NE system are:

- Drive Overview Screen and Support (PMI Diagnostics and Section Control) Screens
- Trending Screen
- Alarm/Fault Summary and History Screens
- Snapshot Screens
- Recipe Editor and Management Screens
- Application Specific Screens (Process Overview, Tracking, and Auxiliary Control)

Each screen is comprised of panels that group information so that the user can find it easier. Standard screens include the following components:

- Program Title Bar
- Pull-down Main Menu
- Rockwell Automation Logo-Screen Title-Date/Time Bar

The use of color on screens has been purposely limited so that colors convey the following information:

- red means that a fault has occurred
- yellow means that an alarm has occurred
- green means running

Refer to section in the Drive Overview for more information on these states.

# **Describing Screen Objects**

Screen Panels may include the following objects that lets the user:

- display text
- display feedback values numerically or graphically
- enter text or values
- select text or values from lists or options
- access other screens
- issue commands

Object	How To Activate
Text (Display Only) Panel	N/A
Snapshot file name: c:\sigmavb\snap1.snp Trigger time: September 8, 93 13:34:52 Trigger event: Manual Trigger description: OverLoad Variable count: 284 Samples per variable: 400	
Raised Beveled Text Labeled Pushbuttons for issuing commands or accessing full or popup screens.	Click the button to issue a command or access a new full or popup screen.
Or	
Speed	

Text Entry Box          Please enter Snapshot description:         I         OK	Click the Box to type the text description and then click the OK button to enter this description.
Value Entry Boxes New High Value O Set 11	Click the value to enter or change the value. The background color of the box changes to blue. Enter values using the PC keyboard or, if enabled the internal keypad that is displayed.
Actual Value and Text Display-Only Boxes Feedback Value Box inset panel Machine Speed: <b>501.47</b> <sub>FPM</sub>	N/A
Graphics Display Boxes with Axes Labeled for Trended Values	

Slider Buttons for setpoint input set $11$ $2500$ $100$ $1000$	To enter a value, click and drag the button up or down the scale to the approximate value you want to enter. The set entry box above displays this approximate value.		
Vertical or Horizontal Scroll Bar List Box with Vertical Scroll Bar Variables not to export: A00_NF2% A01_FB_K% A01_LOAD% A01_NEW_SPD% A01_REF_K% A02_FB_K%	<ol> <li>To select a variable:</li> <li>Click the Up Arrow ▲ or Down Arrow ▼ button to scroll up or down the list. The middle button tells you where you are on the list.</li> <li>Click the element of the list to select it.</li> </ol>		
Option (Radio) Buttons           State         Armed         DisArmed	To select an option, click the <b>O</b> or the text beside it and when the option is displayed as • then that option is selected.		
Check Boxes          Export options         Image: Delete snapshot	To select an option, click the box $\Box$ or the text next to it and when the option is displayed as $\boxtimes$ , then that option is selected.		

Inc/Dec Buttons to increment or decrement entered values	To enter change values: Click the Up Arrow (▲) button to increase the displayed value. Click the Down Arrow (▼) button to decrease the displayed value.	
Date/Time Range Interval Buttons for trended values	<ul> <li>To change an range interval:</li> <li>Click ◀ ◀ and the date time range interval shifts the graph ahead one time interval set with the time interval option.</li> <li>Click ◀ and the date time range interval shifts the graph ahead ¼ of the time interval set with the time interval option.</li> <li>Click ▶ and the date time range interval shifts the graph behind ¼ of the time interval set with the time interval option.</li> <li>Click ▶ and the date time range interval shifts the graph behind ¼ of the time interval set with the time interval option.</li> <li>Click ▶ and the date time range interval set with the time interval option.</li> </ul>	
Internal Keyboard (If enabled) Save Recipe As Name 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 - = BackSp Tab> q w e r t y u i o p [] 1 Caps a s d f g h j k i ; ' Enter Shift z x c v b n m , . / Shift Clear Cancel Ok Figure 2-5 Internal Keyboard	To enter text, click the data entry box twice and the internal keyboard (see Figure 2-5) is displayed. Enter text using the internal keyboard and then click OK.	

Internal Keypad (if enabled)	To enter values, click the data entry box twice and the internal keypad (see Figure 2-6) is displayed. Enter values using the internal keypad and then click OK.
7     8     9     BackSp       4     5     6       1     2     3       -     0     .	
Clear     Cancel     Qk       Figure 2-6     Internal Keyboard	

## **Accessing Screens**

The UOI/UPM menu bar at the top of the screen varies with the specific application. The function of this menu is to access other screens. A UOI menu usually also include UPM elements such as Trending, Alarm/Fault, and Snapshots. All UOI/UPM screens except the Trending Graph screen display the same menu at the top of the screen. The Trends menu elements access popup and full screens that specify parameters necessary for trending.

If elements of the menu end with an exclamation point (!), then clicking that element lets the user directly access another full screen or popup box. Elements without the exclamation point (!), when clicked display a pulldown menu of elements to select from. Menu choices appearing in a light gray are not allowed from the current screen. Figure 2-7 shows an overview of a typical UPM main menu and figure 2-8 shows the screens (full and popup) that can be accessed:

Main Menu	 	SI	GMA Univ	ersal Operator Interfa	ace - [Alarm/Fault Sum	mary]	- ↓
Bar	Tiena:	Bundarte	Ala	arm / Fault \$	Summary	07-07-	95 10:37
						Ac <u>k</u> nowledge	
	Excepti	on Time / M	essage	Туре	Clear or i	Acknowledge '	Time
	Oct 22, 19 A0075@	93 11:27:43 AM	4 Strip Br	HIGH FAULT eak			
	Oct 22, 19 A0002@	93 11:27:40 AM	A Drive Ov	LOW FAULT verLoad	Cleared Oct 22	, 1993 11:32:27 A	M
	Oct 22, 19 A0235@	93 11:22:03 AM	A Guard C	LOW ALARM Open	Acknowledged	Oct 22, 1993 11:	25:12 AM
	Oct 22, 19 MTR_AIRF	93 11:18:37 AM LOW_WRN@	A Motor A	HIGH ALARM	Acknowledged	Oct 22, 1993 11:	25:12 AM
	Oct 22, 19 HYD_OVR	93 11:18:08 AM FEMP_WRN@	4 Hydraul	HIGH ALARM ic Over Temp	Acknowledged	Oct 22, 1993 11:	25:12 AM
	Oct 22, 19 COOL_PM	93 11:14:19 AM P_3@	4 #3 Cooli	HIGH FAULT ing Pump Tripped	Acknowledged	Oct 22, 1993 11:	25:12 AM

Figure 2-7 Typical UPM Main Menu Bar



Figure 2-8 Accessing Other Screens From The Alarm/Fault Summary Screen Main Menu

Additional screens may also be accessed by clicking on buttons. For example pressing the First Press Section Drive button from The Drive Overview Screen lets you access the First Press section control popup box:



Figure 2-9 Accessing Pop-Up Box from Drives Overview First Press Button

For example pressing the First Variable (in this case A2\_B11\_CUR%) button from the Trending Screen lets the user access that Variable Name and Description popup box:



Figure 2-10 Accessing a Pop-Up Box from the Trending Screen's 1st Variable Button

## Alarm/Fault Handling

An SLC database handles alarms and faults as a subset of the data received from the remote systems. The SLC uses this data to update the active alarms and faults list in the real-time system. The SLC also examines the alarms and faults data in those samples, and performs several activities depending on the current and previous state of the data.

With event and exception handling, the following occurs:

- When an alarm or fault becomes active it is date-time stamped and inserted at the head of the Alarm/Fault Summary list. If the alarm or fault is already in the active Alarm/Fault Summary list, it is removed from its current position and inserted at the head of this list.
- If an active alarm or fault clears before it is acknowledged, a clear time is added and color is normal video.
- When an acknowledged active alarm or fault clears, it receives a clear time stamp and is removed from the active **Alarms/Faults Summary** list and appears on the **Event History** list.
- When a cleared alarm or fault is acknowledged, it is date-time stamped to give the acknowledgement time, removed from the active **Alarms/Faults Summary** list and moved to the **Event History** list.
- When an active alarm or fault is acknowledged, it is date-time stamped with the acknowledgement time but not removed from the active **Alarms/Faults Summary** list until it clears.

With either normal or latched alarm or fault handling, all alarms or faults that occur within a sample receive the same date-time stamp. The order of the alarms or faults within the sample does not indicate the actual order of occurrence. Therefore, there is no way to determine which alarm or fault occurred first within the sample.

2.1	Overview	36
2.2	UOI/UPM Start-Up	37
2.3	Types Of Screens	38
2.4	Describing Screen Objects	39
2.5	Accessing Screens	44
2.6	Alarm/Fault Handling	47
Figure	2-1 Drives Overview Screen	37
Figure	2-2 Alarm/Fault Summary Screen	37
Figure	2-3 Full Screen	38
Figure	2-4 Full Screen with Pop-Up Overlay	38
Figure	2-5 Internal Keyboard	42
Figure	<b>2-6</b> Internal Keyboard	43
Figure	2-7 Typical UPM Main Menu Bar	44
Figure	2-8 Accessing Other Screens From The Alarm/Fault Summary Screen Main Menu	45
Figure	2-9 Accessing Pop-Up Box from Drives Overview First Press Button	46
Figure	2-10 Accessing a Pop-Up Box from the Trending Screen's 1st Variable Button	46
	-	

# Chapter 3

# Trending

This chapter describes the trending process. Trending is the act of following general variable movement during the course of time. It shows any tendencies among the variables, which may be helpful when troubleshooting. Within this chapter, the following items are discussed:

- **The Trend Screen** This screen allows users to create a trend graph using up to four variables. With the graph the user can monitor the fluctuations in the variable values, isolate a section of the graph for comparison purposes, and print variable plots.
- **The Trigger Window** This window allows users to create a trigger for monitoring a specific variable condition. Triggers warn a user when the event has happened and can print out a section of the trend graph produced, freeze the Trend Screen at the point the trigger was fired, or create a snapshot for informational purposes.

### IMPORTANT

As a convention in this document, "plot" means the curve for one of the selected variables. "Graph" means the collection of plots, including the horizontal and vertical scales and labels. Thus, a graph simultaneously shows the plots for all of the selected variables. "Screen" means the entire CRT display, including the graph and menu.

### Trending Overview

Trending demonstrates a general direction or movement; a prevailing tendency or inclination. It shows the movement in a course of time for a statistically detectable change, such as a variable value fluctuations. The graph produced by the trending process shows the statistical curves reflecting such a change. The Trend Screen creates such a graph using four user-defined variables. This graph is designed with plots of real time data collected over a specified time period. A user can create a graph with the plots from a past time period or with the plots that are currently being collected. The UPM has access to data for hundreds of variables during a period of up to 48 hours

prior to the current time.

### **The Trending Menu**

The Trend Screen does not use the standard UPM menu. The following items are available from the Trend Screen's Main Menu:

- Memory This option allows users to store the parameters selected in the Trend Screen.
- **Trigger!** With this option, users can create triggers used for monitoring the status of a particular variable.
- **Interval** This option provides a list of time intervals from which a user can select the interval used to draw the graph.
- Alm/Flt A user can enter the Alarm/Fault Screen with this option. Refer to Chapter 5.
- **Snapshot** This option provides the snapshot menu used when creating snapshots. This option is only available if the Snapshot programs are. Refer to Chapter 4, Snapshots, for more information.
- **Print!** A user can print a picture of the graph in the Trend Screen with this option.
- **Return!** This option allows users to exit the Trend Screen.

## The Trend Screen



Figure 3-1 The Trend Screen

Choosing the **Trend!** option from the **Main Menu** displays the **Trend Screen**, as shown in Figure 3-1. The Trend Screen allows for the display of up to four plots superimposed on one graph. Each plot represents the data for a variable over a time span and is displayed with one of four channels. The channel's scheme allows operators to differentiate between plots and thereby eases graph interpretation. The horizontal axis represents the interval in time for which the data was selected. The vertical axis displays the units per division for each plot.

Note that if variables have not been assigned to channels previously, or if channel assignments have been cleared, the Trend Screen's graph appears with no plots on it; just grid lines on a background. The graph's grid is divided into eight intervals on its vertical axis and ten intervals on its horizontal axis.

#### Screen Description

The Trend Screen is divided into three sections. The first section contains the variable information for the plots displaying on the screen. The following is a component of this section.

### Variable

This column displays the four channel push buttons for variable selection. Each push button represents a variable and leads directly to a "Channel" window for variable and parameter specifications. By clicking once on a push button in this column, a user can enter the "Channel" window and select a variable for trending. The name of the variable chosen displays on the face of the channel push button. Located next to each push button is the color used to display the variable plot on the graph. Refer to section 3.2.1, Selecting Variables for Trend Screen, for more information on using the "Channel" window.

The section next to the **Variable** column contains information about the variables chosen for each channel. This information varies based on what is displaying in the graph below. If the graph is being used for simply monitoring variables, this section contains the current variable value, units and description for each channel established. If the graph is being used for finding exact values for areas on a certain plot, this section contains the plot values, units and differences.

The "Graph" section of the Trend Screen displays the plots for the four channels. At the top of this section are the following items:

#### Live check box

Choosing this check box allows the graph to show the most current information. Running in live mode displays the actual variable values as they are fluctuating. When used with the **Time Interval** option, the axis at the bottom of the screen will reflect the applicable amount of time as it passes. An "X" in this check box indicates the Trend Screen is running in Live Mode. To deselect the Live check box, click once on the box marked with an "X". If this check box is blank, the Trend Screen is running is Historical Mode. Refer to section 3.2.3, Selecting a Time Axis, for information on Live and Historical Mode.

#### Date and Time display

This display allows a user to look at a graph from the past. The display will automatically default to the current date and time. If a user wishes to view the variable plots for a particular date and time, the arrow buttons on either side of this display-only field allow the date and time to be adjusted. This can only be done if the Trend Screen is not set to run in live mode (refer to section above). The single arrow push button shifts the graph displayed 1/4 of the time interval set with the **Time Interval** option. The double arrow push button shifts the graph displayed by one time interval of the interval set with the **Time Interval** option. Refer to section, 3.2.2, Adjusting the Time Interval, for more information on the Time Interval option.



### **Selecting Variables for the Trend Screen**

Figure 3-2 The Channel Window

Choosing a push button from the **Variable** column on the **Trend Screen** displays a "Channel" window as shown in Figure 3-2. This window allows user to select a variable for the Trend Screen and configure the vertical axis for a variable's plot. Four channels can be chosen and assigned in any order and the same variable can be assigned to one or all of the channels. Each "Channel" window displays the color of the line used in the graph for plotting the variable information. The vertical scales and center points for the variables can be selected to accommodate the range of values in the plot and to "clean up" the appearance of the graph. Clean up means to adjust the position of the plots on the graph so they do not overlap and become indistinguishable.

When a channel configuration is complete, a new graph is drawn in the Trend Screen with the color associated with that channel. The name of the variable is printed on the push button to which it is assigned. The following items are contained in the "Channel" window:

### Variable Name & Description

Clicking once on this field allows a user to assign a variable to the channel. When the field is selected, a scrolling list appears for the selection of a variable. Scroll bars are available for searching through the list. To select a variable, locate the appropriate one and double click on it.

### Units/Div

Clicking once on this field allows a user to assign a units per division value to the channel. When chosen, a scrolling list appears for the selection of a unit. These values will adjust the vertical axis' gain for the channel. The valid values are: 1, 3, 5, 10, 25, 100, 250, 500, 1000, and 2500. Scroll bars are available for searching through the list. To select a value, locate the appropriate one and double click on it. Refer to section 3.2.1.1, Defining the Center Value and the Units per Division, for more information on adjusting the units per division value.

### **Current Value**

This field displays the current value for the variable displaying in the **Variable Name & Description** field. This value is a helpful reference for the selection of the center value and the units per division.

### Center Value (Current Center)

This field displays the current center value for the plot representing the activity of the variable on the Trend Screen graph. This information is display-only.

### Center Value (New Center)

Clicking once on this field allows a user to enter a new center value for the channel. The new number can be entered manually or the number displaying can be adjusted to the correct value by using the up and down arrows next to the field. Refer to section 3.2.1.1, Defining the Center Value and the Units per Division, for more information on adjusting the center value.

### Clear button

Clicking once on this button allows a user to clear the channel specifications entered. If the user has made adjustments to a previously established channel, this push button will return the "Channel" window to the state it was in before modifications were made.

### Set button

Clicking once on this button allows a user to finalize the channel configuration displaying in the "Channel" window. When selected, the configuration is recognized by the system and the graph in the Trend Screen is redrawn according to the information from the window.

### Cancel button

Clicking once on this button allows a user to exit the "Channel" window. No configuration information will be established by the system.

### Defining the Center Value and the Units per Division

It is possible to modify the center point and vertical scale of a display channel. These quantities are modified using the **Center Value** and **Unit/Div** options on the "Channel" window. Scales and center points can be set at any time since these items are associated with the channel rather than the assigned variable.

If the range of variable values for a period of time is unknown, it may be useful to inspect the graph after assigning the variables only to the channels. Viewing the graph at this point helps to acquire a feel for how the plot of each variable might best be positioned and scaled. This initial display generally gives hints as to how to use the **Center Value** and **Unit/Div** options for positioning each of the plots on the graph and creating a useful display. The scale most often chosen corresponds with the appropriate engineering units (e.g., volts or feet per minute).

When the **Center Value** and **Unit/Div** fields are used to change a channel's center point and vertical scale, remember that changing one effects that particular channel only. Choosing the most suitable values for these quantities may require some plot maneuvering to put the graph in a form which best displays the data. For example, when the scale and center are set, the plot may be centered on the graph and it does not extend above or below the viewing area. Changing either of the values may cause the plot to extend beyond the viewing area. Therefore, new scale and center values have to be chosen to correctly display the plot correctly again.

Note that choosing display parameters for one channel is also dependent on the display parameters of the other channels. For example, constructing a useful graph may require several alternate selections before all the plots appear clearly separated. Effective manipulation to appropriately tailor the appearance of the screen is a matter of experience.

The most convenient way to proceed after assigning variables to channels is to define the unit per division first. This helps make it easier to select the appropriate center value with the **Center Value** fields.

The following are the steps for adjusting the unit per division value for a channel.

- 1. Select the appropriate channel push button from the **Variable** column of the **Trend Screen**.
- 2. A "Channel" window appears. Click once on the Units/Div field.
- 3. A list of valid values appears with a scroll bar for paging through the list. Locate the appropriate value and double click on it.

### IMPORTANT

If the current scale is too large, causing the plot for the variable to appear too small, reduce the scale by selecting a smaller value. If the current scale is too small and the variable takes up too much of the graph, increase the scale by selecting a larger value.

4. After locating the appropriate unit per division, click once on the **Set** push button. This will close the "Channel" window and redraw the plot in the **Trend Screen**.

### IMPORTANT

These steps may be performed multiple times before the best plot appears in the graph.

The following are the steps taken to adjust the center value of a variable.

- 1. Select the appropriate channel push button from the **Variable** column of the **Trend Screen**.
- A "Channel" window appears. Notice there are two Center Value fields. The Current Center field displays the current center value for the variable. The New Center field is used to adjust the center. Click once on the New Center field.
- 3. The **New Center** field becomes active. Change the value by either entering a new value or by using the arrow push buttons located to the right of the field. If the value is manually entered, press <Enter> when the correct value is entered.
- 4. When the value is correct, click once on the **Set** push button. This will close the "Channel" window and redraw the plot for the variable in the **Trend Screen**.

### Adjusting the Time Interval

When looking at a graph, it may be helpful to view the plots with another time interval. For example, if the graph is displaying plots for the information collected every 24 hours, the activity between the 24 hour time span is not clear or may not even be detectable. To view the activity which occurred between the 24 hour time span, a user needs to adjust the time interval. This is done with the use of the **Interval** option appearing on the **Trend Screen's Main Menu**. By selecting the Interval option, a list of the valid time intervals displays. The valid options are: 20 seconds, 100 seconds, 5 minutes, 10 minutes, 30 minutes, 1 hour, 2 hours, 4 hours, 12 hours, 24 hours and 48 hours. When the appropriate time interval is found, click on it. The graph displaying in the Trend Screen will automatically be redrawn, reflecting the new time span. Long time displays require the recovery of large amounts of data from the hard disk. Disk search and data recovery time in excess of 30 seconds are not unusual.

### Selecting a Time Axis

The UPM has access to data for hundreds of variables during a period of up to 48 hours prior to the current time. By choosing the appropriate time axis and/or time interval between data points, operators may tailor the Trend Screen graph to best reveal interesting trends in the data. Operators may define the time axis and the time interval independently of one another. There are two modes for defining a time axis: Live Mode and Historical Mode.

### Live Mode

Live Mode displays the data fluctuations for variables while they are actually happening. This mode displays a graph that is constantly in motion, meaning that the plots on the graph are moving with the changes made by the variables. Live Mode presents the most current picture of what is happening within the network. To activate Live Mode, locate the **Live** check box in the **Trend Screen** and click once on it. The current date and time will be displayed at the left end of the horizontal axis. Depending on the chosen time interval, the rest of the axis represents a certain amount of time in the past.

		SIGM/	Universal	Process	s Monitor - [	Trend Scre	een]	
<u>M</u> emory	<u>T</u> rigger!	<u>I</u> nterval	<u>A</u> lm/Flt	<u>S</u> napsh	ot <u>P</u> rint!	<u>H</u> elp <u>R</u> e	turn!	
<u> </u>	/ariable		T1= 13:00:19	Units	T2= 12:59:14	Delta T =	00:01:04	26-July-94
	BDF_ELAPSE	:D_HR:	31960.00	HOURS	32496.00	-436	5.00	13:11:15
2	CL_DIA_X	100	319.60	INCHES	324.96	4	.36	
3	C_CML_FI	B_X	1170.69	%	1190.33	-15	5.98	Interval: 5 Min
4	C_SPLIT_SI	ET_X	-47.01	%	-42.64	-28	3.75	Trigger DisArmed
<u>Live</u>	4 4 26-J	ul-1994 13:	01:24 🕨 🔰	•				
40000		Ц		Ţ	1			
20000								OFF
4007						N N		N.
	$\mathbf{X}$		<					
20000			$\sum$		$\mathbf{X}$	$  \rangle$		
10000					$\sim$			
200			$\sim$					
	4 111	$\Lambda \Lambda I$			$\Delta M = \Delta M$		$\Lambda \Lambda \Lambda$	
Ŏ								HEILER S
	(V,V,V)		V = V	VY	VVV	V V V	V = V = V	$\nabla \vee \vee \vee$
		$\mathbf{X}$			N N			
-20000								
-10000		$\sim \sqrt{1}$		$-X \perp$				
-200		$\sim$		-				
						N		N
-40000								
-20000	Jul 26 13:01:24	Jul: 13:0	26 00:24	Jul 26 12:59::	Ju 24 12:	il 26 58:24	Jul 26 12:57:24	Jul 26 12:56:24

### **Historical Mode**

Figure 3-3 The Trend Screen with T1 and T2 slider bars

Historical Mode displays the variable plots for a specified date and time. Before using Historical Mode, verify Live Mode is deselected (no "X" appears in the check box). To specify a date and time, locate the **Date and Time** display next to the **Live** check box in the **Trend Screen**. Click once on the display. This activates the Historical Mode and allows a user to adjust the date and time. While in Historical Mode, the arrow push buttons can be used to adjust the display to the appropriate date and time. As the date and time are adjusted, the plots on the graph move to form the appropriate display.

Historical Mode provides another feature. Slide bars, labeled T1 and T2, appear above the graph, as shown in Figure 3-3. These slide bars can be moved by placing the cursor directly on them and dragging the cursor to the desired location. By positioning T1 above the graph it is possible to find out the exact values within each plot. When T1 is moved from its home position it forms a vertical line intersecting the plots on the graph. Above the graph, the Trend Screen lists the exact values for the four variables where the line intersects the plots. When the T2 slide is positioned within the graph, the screen lists the exact values for the four channels at the position of the T1 slide, the T2 slide and gives their difference.

The slide bar feature enables users to zoom in on a point of interest along the plots also. By positioning the T1 slide on a plot point and adjusting the time interval, a more detailed view results

while leaving the point of interest at the same place on the graph. Refer to section 3.2.2, Adjusting the Time Interval, for more information on time intervals.

## Saving, Loading, and Deleting Variable Data with Memory Option

The **Memory** option on the **Trend Screen's Main Menu** lets the user save a variable's configuration so that the graphs produced by its variables can be loaded and displayed at a later time without having to re-enter the information. Each variable configuration set consists of up to four variables that make up a single trend graph. Information stored for the set include the following:

- the variable assigned to each channel
- the center values assigned to each channel
- the unit/div assigned to each channel

		SIGMA U	Jniversal	Operator Int	terface -	[Trend	Screen]		
<u>M</u> em	iory <u>T</u> rigger	! <u>I</u> nterval	<u>A</u> lm/Flt	<u>S</u> napshot	Print!	<u>R</u> eturn!			
	Variable	ī	1= 16:46:00.	.00 Units D	escriptio	n		29-Sep-	98
2				Save /	ls				
3	Save As:	DM6_FB							-
4	Existing Var	iable Config	urations:	]					med
	D3M_FB D4M_FB								Ţa
100	DM6_FB								OFF
50									t.
206 500									F.
									Ł.
0	Current Set	tinas <sup>,</sup>							L.
0	Variable Na	angs. ame De	scription					<u>Units</u>	
	AMX_FLT_TS	SY	STEM AUTO	MAX RACK FAU	LT			N/A	
-500	BR1_FLT_TS	BRI	JSH ROLL #	1 STARTER FAU	ILT			N/A	
-500	ADC_OK_TS	SY	STEM ANAL	OG CARD NOT (	ЭK			N/A	
	BR1_FLT_TS	BRI	USH ROLL #	1 STARTER FAU	ILT			N/A	-
-100	ОК	Cance	ī l						
+100 +100									

Figure 3-4 The Memory Save As PopupWindow

To save a trend graph of up to 4 variables in a variable configuration with the **Memory** option:

- 1. Verify that the variable names for each of the four channels of the trend graph are the desired ones to be saved.
- 2. Select the **Memory** option from the **Trend Screen's Main Menu**.
- 3. When the four menu options are displayed, select **Save As**.

The "Save As" popup window (see figure 3-4) displays

- the **Save As** entry box
- the Existing Variable Configurations box
- the **Current Settings (Variable Name, Description** of the variable, and **Units)** of the four variables currently displayed on the trend screen
- The **OK** and **Cancel** buttons
- 4. Enter a variable configuration name using the internal keyboard in the **Save As:** entry box or click on an already-saved variable configuration in the **Existing Variable Configuration** box.
- 5. Click the **OK** button to save the variable configuration. To exit the **Memory Save** option without saving the variable configuration, click the **Cancel** button.

To load an available saved variable configuration to graph on the trend screen.

- 1. Select the **Memory** option from the **Trend Screen's Main Menu**.
- 2. When four menu options appear, select **Load**.

The "Load" popup window (see Figure 3-5). appears and displays:

- Available Variable Configurations: display box
- Variable Name Filter: entry box with ON/Off buttons
- the **Settings For: (Variable Name, Description** of the variable, and **Units)** of the four variables) the selected variable configuration
- The **OK** and **Cancel** buttons

- Tanabic	11- 09:40:59.00 Units Description	30-Sep-
	Load	
Available Variable	Configurations:	
D3M_FB		
D4M_FB DM6_FB		
Variable Name Fil	ter:	Comment Filters
O On		<none></none>
(• Off		
Settings For: D3M	_FB	
Variable Name	Description	Units
D3M_BUS_VOLTS	D3 Main DC bus voltage (volts)	N/A
D3M_SPEED_FB	D3 Main speed fb (20000cnts=4000fpm)	FPM
D3M_TORQUE_FB	D3 Main_torq fb (4095cnts=TRQBAR × lq)	%
D3M MOT VOLTS	D3 Main motor voltage feedback (VRMS)	N/A

Figure 3-5 The Memory Load Window

Using The Variable Name Filter

If there is a large number of available stored variable configurations, use the **Variable Name Filter** to find a variable(s) in an available variable configuration in which you want to load.

To use the **Variable Name Filter**, click the variable name filter **On** and enter the filter (prefix, suffix of the variable name) that is needed to find the variable configuration that includes the variable name you want to load. . Click the variable name filter **Off** and then **ON** to activate the search for the variable name that matches the specified filter.

If more than one variable configuration whose variable name(s) match the filter is found, the Load popup window lists these variable configurations in the **Available Variable Configurations** display box. If only one variable configuration includes variable name(s) that match the filter, then the system displays that configuration on the trend screen.

- 3. Click the variable configuration in the **Available Variable Configurations** display box to verify the variable names of that variable configuration.
- 4. Click the **OK** push button to setup the variable configuration in the Trend Screen. The graph is redrawn according to the variables included in that variable configuration. To exit the **Memory Save** option without loading the variable configuration, click the **Cancel** button.

Other Memory menu options on the Trend Screen's Main Menu are:

- Saving trend screen channels for up to 4 variables as an existing variable configuration
- Deleting an existing variable configuration

### **Printing a Trend Graph**

The display on the Trend Screen can be printed by using the **Print!** option from the **Trend Screen's Main Menu**. Simply, click once on the **Print!** option and printing will begin.

### CAUTION

Selecting the Print option causes the screen to lock up for a short time while the picture is sent to the color printer. Printing the screen will take approximately one minute.

## The Trend Screen Trigger Feature



Figure 3-6 The Trigger Window

Choosing the Trigger! option from the Trend Screen's Main Menu displays the "Trigger"

window, as shown in Figure 3-6. A trigger initiates a reaction when something occurs in the system. Triggers fire off a series of commands if the system conditions meet preset requirements. This process is the most useful to users who are tracking the occurrence of an event within the system. The "Trigger" window aids in the creation and execution of triggers. This makes it possible to monitor whether or not a variable's values are staying within a defined range while viewing other variables of interest.

The process of arming a trigger on the UPM consists of the following:

- · assigning a variable as the trigger
- · defining and enabling the high and low trigger values
- · defining the results of a trigger event
- arming the trigger

The actual trigger process is a simple one. A trigger is setup to monitor one variable at a time. An upper and lower limit for the variable's value is established, thus creating a range where the value will fall and set off the trigger. A trigger cannot be armed without enabling a high or low value. Once the value range is established, the course of action taken by the trigger must be specified. After the action is specified, the trigger can be armed. When a trigger is armed, if the variable condition falls within the value range, the trigger will be fired.

Based on the course of action indicated for the trigger, a few events will take place to inform the operator the trigger has fired and to help preserve the actual event itself. The following is a list of the different actions available and the events that will occur if chosen.

**Continue** - When Continue is the action indicated for the trigger to take, the following events occur:

- The trend graph continues to scroll as it normally does.
- An alarm is triggered and the title bar on any screen turns red, alerting the operator to go to the Alarm/Fault Summary (refer to Chapter 5) or the Event History (refer to Chapter 5) screens.

Freeze - When Freeze is the action indicated for the trigger to take, the following events occur:

- An alarm is triggered and the title bar on any screen turns red, alerting the operator to go to the Alarm/Fault Summary or the Event History screens.
- The graph continues to scroll until 1/4 of the selected Trend Screen interval or five minutes has elapsed (whichever is less).
- On the Trend Screen, the T1 bar marks the trigger point and the graph remains frozen until another operation is made or until data for the time interval displayed on the trend screen is no longer available. This is when the elapsed time since the trigger has occurred exceeds the 48 hour historic trend storage time.

### IMPORTANT

The Freeze option from the "Trigger" window is only active while viewing the Trend Screen. Moving to another screen will cause the trigger mode to change to continue.

Print - When Print is the action indicated for the trigger to take, the following events occur:

- An alarm is triggered and the title bar on any screen turns red, alerting the operator to go to the Alarm/Fault Summary or Event History screens.
- The graph continues to scroll until 1/4 of the selected Trend Screen interval or five minutes has elapsed (whichever is less).
- On the Trend Screen, the T1 bar marks the trigger point and the graph remains frozen until the print operation is complete.

### IMPORTANT

The Print option from the "Trigger" window is only active while viewing the Trend Screen. Moving to another screen will cause the trigger mode to change to continue.

**Snapshot** - When Snapshot is the action indicated for the trigger to take, the following events occur:

- An alarm is triggered and the title bar on any screen turns red, alerting the operator to go to the Alarm/Fault Summary or the Event History screens.
- The graph continues to scroll until 1/4 of the screen or five minutes has elapsed (whichever is less).
- The T1 bar marks the trigger point and the graph remains frozen until the snapshot capture is complete.

### IMPORTANT

The Snapshot option from the "Trigger" function is only available while the displayed interval is within the normal Snapshot Capture screen intervals (20 seconds, 100 seconds or 5 minutes).

The trigger event may happen at any time, or never. Assigning other variables to the display channels does not disable the trigger. Moving between the Trend Screen and the other screens does not disable the trigger either. When a variable has been chosen and the trigger armed, the grey "Trigger Disarmed" label, which appears in the upper right corner of the Trend Screen, displays "Trigger Armed" in blue letters. When a configured trigger occurs and the Freeze option from the "Trigger" window has been selected, this label displays "Trigger Fired".

The following items are contained in the "Trigger" window

### State radio buttons

These radio buttons reflect whether or not the trigger is armed. Before a trigger is considered ready, a user must click once on the **Armed** radio button. This sets up the trigger for execution. When a trigger has fired or is not ready, the **DisArmed** radio button is selected. A black dot appears in front of the option that has been chosen.

### **Trigger Variable**

Click once on this field to assign a variable to the trigger. A list containing all the variables available for use appears below the bar. Any of the variables, including one of those already assigned to a display channel, can be designated to serve as the trigger variable. A scroll bar is available to review the items in the list with. To select a variable, position the cursor over the desired variable name and click once. This designates the chosen variable as the one monitored against **High** and **Low Values**.

### Option radio buttons

Select one of these radio buttons to assign a course of action to be taken when the trigger is fired. A black dot appears next to the item that has been chosen.

### Snapshot Time Span radio buttons

Select one of these radio button to set up the time span the snapshot will be saved to a file. These radio buttons can only be used only if the snapshot feature is available.

The "Trigger High Value" section of the "Trigger" window allows users to enable the high value of the trigger value range which indicates when the trigger should be fired. The following items are contained in this section.

### Enable High check box

Click once on this check box to assign the high value in the **New High Value** field as the upper limit in the trigger value range. This check box must be selected in order for the trigger to accept the value. An "X" in this box indicates the item has been selected.

### High Value

This field displays the current high value for the trigger. This display-only field is helpful when making modifications to the trigger before it is armed.

### New High Value

Click once on this field to activate for entering a high value. A user can either enter the value directly into this field or use the arrow push buttons located to the right of the field. If the value is entered manually, a user must press <Enter> for the window to accept the number. Once a value has been entered, the **Enable High** check box must be selected.

The "Trigger Low Value" section of the "Trigger" window allows users to enable the low value of the trigger value range which indicates when the trigger should be fired. The following items are contained in this section.

### Enable Low check box

Click once on this check box to assign the low value in the **New Low Value** field as the lower limit in the trigger value range. This check box must be selected in order for the trigger to accept the value. An "X" in this box indicates the item has been selected.

### Low Value

This field displays the current low value for the trigger. This display-only field is helpful when making modifications to the trigger before it is armed.

#### New Low Value

Click once on this field to activate for entering a low value. This value, must be less than the value entered in the **High Value** field. A user can either enter the value directly into this field or use the arrow push buttons located to the right of the field. If the value is entered manually, a user must press <Enter> for the window to accept the number. Once a value has been entered, the **Enable Low** check box must be selected.

The following push buttons are contained in the "Trigger" window:

#### Clear push button

Click once on this push button to disarm the "Trigger" window and clear any modifications. Use this option when a trigger was armed but there is no longer a need to monitor the variable defined as the trigger.

#### Set push button

Click once on this push button to confirm the items established in the window as trigger parameters. A trigger can not be armed if this push button is not selected.

#### Cancel push button

Click once on this push button to cancel the changes made and exit the "Trigger" window.

### Summary

This chapter has explained the trending process and how a user can utilize it when monitoring the status of a system. Also, this chapter discussed the trigger feature. This feature offers multiple options for isolating a particular event and retaining the information for troubleshooting purposes. A good option to use with trending and triggers is the Snapshot feature. Refer to Chapter 4 for more information about Snapshots

3.1 Trending Overview		
3.1.1 The Trending Menu	50	
3.2 The Trend Screen	51	
3.2.1 Selecting Variables for the Trend Screen	54	
3.2.1.1 Defining the Center Value and the Units per Division	57	
3.2.2 Adjusting the Time Interval		
3.2.3 Selecting a Time Axis	59	
3.2.3.1 Live Mode	59	
3.2.3.2 Historical Mode	60	
3.2.4 Saving, Loading, and Deleting Variable Data with Memory Option	61	
3.2.5 Printing a Trend Graph	64	
3.3 The Trend Screen Trigger Feature	64	
3.4 Summary	69	
Figure 3-1 The Trend Screen	51	
Figure 3-2 The Channel Window		
Figure 3-3 The Trend Screen with T1 and T2 slider bars		
Figure 3-4 The Memory Save As PopupWindow		
Figure 3-5 The Memory Load Window		
Figure 3-6 The Trigger Window		

# Chapter 4

# Snapshots

The Snapshot feature is the process of generating a file of trended data over a specified interval of time. This data file is then available for export as a database, spreadsheet or binary file. This chapter highlights the Snapshot process and discusses how to configure, generate, maintain and export snapshot files.

## **Snapshot Overview**

Snapshots are of three types:

- · Go
- · Trigger Variable
- · Capture

Each type of snapshot differs as to when and how long an interval is generated.

Type of Snapshot	Generated:	for the time interval specified:
Go	immediately	by the currently selected radio button in the <b>Snapshot</b> <b>Configure</b> window
Capture	at the most recent (left most) time currently on the trend graph	by the trend graph interval (must be 20 sec., 100 sec., or 5 minutes)
Trigger Variable	when the trigger variable exceeds its high or low limit	by the currently selected radio button in the snapshot time span portion of the "Trigger" window

Snapshot files can be generated at any time. The Snapshot option is located on the "Main

Menu". Since only five snapshot files can be saved on the hard drive, a user can delete any of the five snapshots stored that are no longer in use or export snapshots to third party software that you want to use at a later time. This chapter discusses:

- · Go Snapshots Configuring and generating Go Snapshots; Refer to section 4.2
- **Capture Snapshots** Configuring and generating Capture Snapshots; Refer to section 4.3
- **Trigger Variable Snapshots -** Specifying snapshot as the result of a trigger event; Setting the Snapshot Time Span; Generating the Snapshot; Refer to section 4.4
- File Maintenance Selecting snapshot files to delete or to export; Refer to section 4.5
- Snapshot Export Utility Selecting snapshot files to export as a spreadsheet, database or binary file; Selecting variables within the snapshot file to be exported. Refer to section 4.6
# Go Snapshots

Use the Go Snapshot option to generate a snapshot immediately containing 20 seconds, 100 seconds, or 5 minutes of trend data. Before generating a Go snapshot, its time span must be configured.

# **Configuring Go Snapshots**



Figure 4-1 The Go Snapshot Configuration Window

Click **Configure** from the **Snapshot** pull-down menu displays the **Snapshot Configure** window, as shown in Figure 4-1. This window allows a user to specify the time saved in a Go snapshot. Once the time span is set, it remains in effect until it is changed again from this window.

# Time Span radio buttons

Clicking one of these radio buttons configures the time that is saved in a Go Snapshot. A time span stays in effect for all Go snapshots until it is reconfigured from this window. The available choices for the time span are: **20 Seconds**, **100 Seconds**, and **300 Seconds** (5 **Minutes**). A black dot appearing in the radio button indicates the selected time span.

## **OK** push-button

Clicking this push-button activates the time span for the Go snapshot and then removes the **Snapshot Configure:** window from the screen.

## Cancel push-button

Clicking this push-button exits the **Snapshot Configure** window and cancels any changes made to the time span.

SIGMA Universal Process Monitor - [Trend Screen]										
<u>M</u> emory	<u>T</u> rigger!	<u>I</u> nterva	il <u>A</u> lm/F	Flt <u>S</u> ı	napsh	ot <u>P</u> rint!	<u>H</u> elp	<u>R</u> eturn!		
Va	ariable			D:19	Units	T2= 12:59:1	4 Delt	a T = 00:01:04	2	26-July-94
1	Undefin	ed	<u>1 L</u>	N/A 👘	NA	N//	۹	N/A		13:23:46
2	Undefin	ed	J	N/A	NA	Nb	۹.	N/A		
3 🔜 📃	Undefin	1	N/A	NA	Nb	۹.	N/A	Int	erval: 5 Min	
4	Undefin	ed	1	N/A	NA	N//	4	N/A	Trig	ger DisArmed
🗆 Live 🛛	4 4 26-	Jul-1994 1	3:01:24 🚺			_			, –	
		Please er	nter Snap	shot d	escrij	otion:				OFF
		Interval a	t 10millis	second	s					
-										
			Oł	<b>c</b>		Car	cel			
_										
ر 1	ul 26 3:01:24	ป <sub>ุ่น</sub> 13:	26 00:24	J 12	ul 26 2:59:	J 24 12	ul 26 1:58:24	Jul: 12:5	26 7:24	Jul 26 12:56:24

# **Generating Go Snapshots**

Figure 4-2 The Go Window

Click **Go** from the **Snapshot** pull-down menu to display the "Go" window as shown in Figure 4-2. This window allows users to generate a snapshot immediately. Before generating a Go snapshot, the user can enter a description (up to 66 characters) for the snapshot, which can be referred to later when maintaining or exporting snapshot files.

#### Snapshot Description (optional)

Enter a description for the Go snapshot being generated. When the snapshot is generated, the description is saved and appears as the **Trigger Description** in the **Snapshot File Maintenance** (refer to section 4.5) and **SIGMA Snapshot Export Utility** (refer to section 4.6) screens. If an entry is not made in this field, no description appears.

# **OK** push-button

Click this push-button to generate the snapshot immediately.

# Cancel push-button

Click this push-button to cancel the generation of the snapshot.

# IMPORTANT

The SIGMA NE snapshot system only allows the storage of five snapshots. When attempting to take the sixth snapshot, after 5 snapshot files already exist, a message window appears on the screen. The sixth snapshot is written to a file, however, the Go window takes you directly to the **Snapshot File Maintenance Screen** to allow you to delete one of the snapshot files. If you return from the **Snapshot File Maintenance Screen** without deleting one of the snapshot files, the current or sixth snapshot is deleted for you.

# **Capture Snapshots**

Use the Capture snapshot to generate a snapshot starting at the most recent time currently displayed on the trend graph. The time interval for this snapshot is specified by the trend graph interval. The Capture option is only available on the **Trend Screen's Main Menu** (refer to Chapter 3, Trending) and only when trend interval is 20 seconds, 100 seconds or 5 minutes. Unlike the Go snapshots, a Capture snapshot file is generated for the time interval currently viewed on the Trend Screen. This information can be either current or historical.

To generate a Capture snapshot:

- 1. Make sure that the trend graph interval in the Trend Screen's Main Menu is 20 seconds, 100 seconds, or 5 minutes. Refer to Section 3.2.2, Adjusting The Time Interval.
- 2. Click **Capture** from the **Snapshot** pull-down menu in the Trend Screen's Main Menu to display the "Capture" window (refer to Figure 4-3), which is similar to the one associated with the Go snapshot.

Please enter Capture description:					
<u>Q</u> K <u>C</u> ancel					



- 3. Enter a description for the Capture snapshot to be generated. When the snapshot is generated, the description is saved and appears as the Trigger Description in the Snapshot File Maintenance (refer to section 4.5) and SIGMA Snapshot Export Utility (refer to section 4.6) screens. If an entry is not made in this field, no description appears in these screens
- 4. Click the **OK** push-button to generate the snapshot starting at the most recent time currently displayed on the trend graph.

# Trigger Variable Snapshots

Trigger Va	ariable	State © Armed	Clea <u>r</u> <u>S</u> et <u>C</u> ancel			
F13H_FLD_IFB	_ FI	ELD CURRENT FEEDBAC	ск 🛓			
Option O Freeze O Print O Continue Snapshot	Snapsi ○ 20 Sec ○ 100 Se ○ 300 Se	n <b>ot Time Span</b> conds econds econds (5 min)	Trigger High Value Enable High High Value 0 150			
Snapshot Triggered on F	<b>Descrip</b> 13H_FLD_I	<b>tion</b> FB_ exceeds 150%	Trigger Low Value  Enable Low Low Value  0  0  Control  Contro  Control  Co			

Figure 4-4 The Trigger Window

Use the Trigger Variable snapshot to generate a snapshot when a trigger variable exceeds its specified high or low value. This snapshot is set up using the Trigger Window accessed from the Trend Screen Main Menu. The Trigger Window is shown in Figure 4-4. To set up a Trigger Variable snapshot, the user must:

- 1. Arm a trigger variable as explained in 3.3 entitled Trend Screen Trigger Feature
- 2. Make sure the Trigger Variable snapshot is specified as the snapshot **Option** in the **Trigger Window** (refer to section 3.3, for a description of the Snapshot option)
- 3. Set the **Snapshot Time Span** (clicking either one of the three 20 second, 100 second or 5 minute radio button)
- 4. Enter a **Snapshot Description** (maximum of 66 characters) for the Trigger Variable snapshot file. When the snapshot is generated, the description is saved and appears as the **Trigger Description** in the **SIGMA Snapshot Export Utility** (refer to section 4.6) and **Snapshot File Maintenance** (refer to section 4.5) screens. If an entry is not made in this field, no description appears in these screens
- 5. Click the **Set** push-button to confirm parameters set for the Trigger Variable snapshot. The Trigger Variable snapshot is not generated until the trigger variable exceeds its specified high or low value.

# Snapshot File Maintenance

Sna	Snapshot File Maintenance											
Current local snapshot files: 15_13_10.snp 15_41_57_snp	Delete Local File											
	Goto <u>Export</u>											
	Return											
La	cal Snapshot data											
Snapshot file name: C:\sigma\snapshot\	15_14_57.snp											
Trigger time: 11/10/02 02:56:14 PM	Snapshot duration: 00:00:37											
Tringer event: Go spanshot												
Trigger description: Triggered on F14H_	FLD_IFB_ exceeds 150%											
Variable count: 445 Samples	per variable: 748 (50 ms interval)											
Current Server snapshot files: 15_13	3_10.snp											
File Name Size Date	15_13_10.snp											
15_13_10.snp 845786 10 NOV 20	D2											
15_14_57.snp 845786 10 NOV 20	D2 Delete Server											
15_15_22.snp 845786 10 NOV 20	02 15_13_10.snp											
15_15_41.snp 845786 10 NOV 20	U2											
	Refresh											

Figure 4-5 The Snapshot File Maintenance Screen

Clicking **File Maintenance** from the Snapshot pull-down menu displays the **Snapshot File Maintenance** Screen as shown in Figure 4-5. This screen allows users to view, retrieve, and delete server snapshot files. This screen also allows users to delete or access local snapshot files via the Snapshot Export Utility (refer to section 4.6).

#### Screen Description

The "Current local snapshot files" section of the Snapshot File Maintenance Screen displays three fields for the selection of local snapshot files.

# Local Snapshot drive

Allows the user to select the disk drive where **Snapshot File Maintenance** looks for local snapshots. When a new drive is selected, the directories which are found on that drive appear in the local snapshot directory list (see Figure 4-5). To select a drive, click the arrow at the right side of the field to display a list box containing all available drives, and then click the desired drive.

## Local Snapshot directory

Allows the user to select the directory on the selected drive where the **Snapshot File Maintenance** looks for local snapshots. When a new directory is selected, the snapshots which are found in that directory appear in the local snapshot file list (see Figure 4-5). To select a directory, click the desired name. If more directory names are found than can fit in the list box, then a scroll bar appears at the right side of the list.

## Local Snapshot File

Allows the user to select the local snapshot from the selected directory. Only files with the .SNP file extension (i.e., snapshot) are listed. When a snapshot is selected, its file information appears in the snapshot information group (see Figure 4-5). The field directly below the section title **Current local snapshot files** displays the names of the files located on the drive and directory selected. To select a file, click the file name.

The **Local snapshot data** section contains various file information for the selected snapshot. All fields in this section are display-only.

#### Snapshot File Name

This field displays the name of the local snapshot file selected. A snapshot file is selected using the fields provided in the **Current snapshot files** section. The file's drive, directory and file name are displayed. For example, **d:\15\_13\_10.snp**. A snapshot file name is composed of the hour, minute, and second (separated by underscores) that the snapshot was generated, and the file extension .SNP.

#### Trigger time

Time when the snapshot was generated. A snapshot can be generated in several ways. Refer to sections 4.2, 4.3, and 4.4 for more information about generating a snapshot.

# Trigger event

Type of event (manual or automatic) used to generate snapshots. The Trigger Event for Go or Capture snapshots is "Manual". The Trigger Event for Trigger Variable snapshots is "Automatic".

# Trigger description

The snapshot's description text. Snapshot descriptions are entered by the user in several ways. Refer to sections 4.3, and 4.4 for more information on entering snapshot descriptions.

## Snapshot duration

The length of time in the snapshot in HH:MM:SS format. This is based on the trend sample interval and the number of samples per variable in the snapshot (see below).

# Variable count

The number of variables in the snapshot. Snapshots usually contain all trended variables, therefore the count which appears here is usually the number of trended variables. However, a snapshot that is exported by the Snapshot Export Utility (selecting the binary file format option) may have only a subset of these variables, and, therefore, the count which appears here may be less than the number of trended variables.

#### Samples per variable

The number of samples for each variable in the snapshot. Also, the trend sample interval is displayed here

The **Current server snapshot files** section contains a data grid displaying all server snapshot files that are available for retrieval or deletion.

#### Server Snapshot Files Grid

The Server snapshot files grid displays the file name, file size, and file creation date for all of the

available snapshots on the server. Use the grid to select the desired server snapshot file. When a

file is selected, the file name will appear above the grid.

The following push-buttons are located on the Snapshot File Maintenance Screen.

## Delete Local File

Click this push-button to delete the local snapshot file currently selected in the **Current local snapshot files** fields. Refer to section 4.5.1, Deleting Local Files with the File Maintenance Screen, on deleting local files with this push-button.

## Goto Export

Click this push-button to use the **SIGMA Snapshot Export Utility Screen** to export local snapshots to other file formats. Refer to section 4.6 for more information about this utility.

# Return

Click this push-button to exit the Snapshot File Maintenance Screen and return to the previous screen.

# Retrieve File

Click this push-button to retrieve the server snapshot file currently selected in the Server snapshot files grid.

#### Delete Server File

Click this push-button to delete the server snapshot file currently selected in the **Server snapshot files grid.** Refer to section 4.5.2, Deleting Server Files with the File Maintenance Screen, on deleting server files with this push-button.

# Refresh

Click this push-button to refresh the **Server snapshot files grid** to reflect the present snapshot files available on the server.

# **Deleting Local Files with the File Maintenance Screen**

The following are the steps for deleting local files with the Snapshot File Maintenance Screen.

- 1. Enter the **Snapshot File Maintenance Screen**.
- 2. Locate the appropriate file by selecting the drive, directory and the file name in the **Current local snapshot files** section.
- 3. Clicking a local snapshot file displays its snapshot information in the **Local snapshot data** section of the screen. Use this information to locate the local snapshot file to delete.
- 4. Once the file is highlighted, click the **Delete Local File** push-button. The file is deleted from the hard drive.

These steps can be repeated as often as needed.

# IMPORTANT

If the file selected using the steps above needs to be exported instead of deleted, use the **Goto Export** push-button.

# **Deleting Server Files with the File Maintenance Screen**

The following are the steps for deleting server files with the Snapshot File Maintenance Screen.

- 1. Enter the **Snapshot File Maintenance Screen**.
- 2. Select the appropriate file in the Server snapshot files grid.
- 3. Clicking the snapshot file displays its name in the **Delete Server File** push-button.
- 4. Once the file is selected, click the **Delete Server File** push-button. The file is deleted from the server.

These steps can be repeated as often as needed.

# Snapshot Export Utility

	SIGMA Snapshot	Export Utility, v2.0-1
Available snapshots: snap1.snp snap2.snp snap3.snp snap4.snp snap5.snp snap6.snp	d: [SCSI_1]	Export destination: Use tape drive d: [SCSI_1] Export format Export format Excel (XLS) Access (MDB) Binary (SNP) Export options Delete snapshot File name: SNAP1.XLS (0.30 MB)
Snapshot file name: Trigger time: Trigger event: Trigger description:	d:\snap1.snp 8/31/94 10:09:46 AM Manual Manual sample snapshot	Variable count: 478 Snapshot duration: 00:00:31 Samples per variable: 620 (50 ms interval)
Variables not to be e BDF_ELAPSED_HR BDP_ELAPSED_HR CL_DIA_X100 CL_DRAW CL_ROLL_RPM D1_DIA_ACK D1_DIA_X100 D1_DRAW D1_FPM	Select     Select     Select     All variables [     Starting with:     Ending with:     Add ->      Export	t options       27 variables to be exported:         selected       C_AC_VRMS_X       +         C

Figure 4-6 The SIGMA Snapshot Export Utility Screen

Clicking **Export** from the **Snapshot** pull-down menu displays the **SIGMA Snapshot Export Utility** Screen, as shown in Figure 4-6. The Snapshot Export Utility allows snapshot files generated by SIGMA NE to be converted to other file formats. This allows data in the snapshot to be analyzed with a number of popular Microsoft and third-party software packages. The Snapshot Export Utility supports the following file formats:

- · Microsoft Excel spreadsheet files (XLS)
- Microsoft Access database files (MDB)
- · Binary files (SNP)

#### Screen Description

Data fields in the SIGMA Snapshot Export Utility screen are divided into several groups. In the upper left corner of the screen appears the **Available snapshots** group. Data fields in this group allow for the selection of the snapshot to export. The group contains the following:

# Snapshot drive

Allows the user to select the disk drive where the Snapshot Export Utility looks for snapshots. When a new drive is selected, the directories which are found on that drive appear in the snapshot directory list (see below). To select a drive, click the arrow at the right side of the field to display a list box containing all available drives, and then click the desired drive.

## Snapshot directory

Allows the user to select the directory on the selected drive where the Snapshot Export Utility

looks for snapshots. When a new directory is selected, the snapshots which are found in that

directory appear in the snapshot file list (see below). To select a directory, click the desired

name. If more directory names are found than can fit in the list box, then a scroll bar appears at

the right side of the list.

# Snapshot file

Allows the user to select the snapshot from the selected directory, which the Snapshot Export Utility exports when the **Export** push-button is clicked. Only files with the .SNP file extension (i.e., snapshot) are listed. When a snapshot is selected, its file information appears in the snapshot file group (see below).

In the upper right corner of the Snapshot Export Utility screen appears the **Export destination** group. Data fields in this group pertain to how and where the Snapshot Export Utility exports the selected snapshot. The snapshot is selected from the **Available snapshots** group. The **Export destination** group contains the following:

# Destination drive pull-down display

This field, located directly below the **Use tape drive** check box, allows a user to select the disk drive where the Snapshot Export Utility exports the snapshot. When a new drive is selected, the directories which are found on that drive appear in the **Destination directory** display directly below this field. To select a drive, click the arrow at the right side of the field to display a list box containing all available drives, and then click the desired drive.

# Destination directory display list box

This field, located directly below the **Destination drive** display, allows a user to select the directory where the Snapshot Export Utility exports the snapshot. To select a directory, click the desired name. If more directory names are found than can fit in the list box, then a scroll bar appears at the right side of the list.

# Export format radio buttons

This group of radio buttons allows a user to select the export file format. To select a file format,

click the radio button next to the desired format. The following formats are supported:

- **Excel (XLS)** Microsoft Excel spreadsheet format. Rows in the exported spreadsheet are time-stamped snapshot samples; columns in the exported spreadsheet are the variables exported from the snapshot. Snapshot header information appears in the first several rows of the spreadsheet.
- Access (MDB) Microsoft Access database format. Rows in the exported database table are time-stamped snapshot samples; columns in the exported database table are the variables exported from the snapshot. Snapshot header information appears in a memo field in the first row of the database table.
- **Binary (SNP)** SIGMA snapshot binary format. Only variables which have been selected from the variable selection group (see below) are exported. The snapshot created with this option may be re-exported at a later time.

#### Export options

This group allows the user to select export options. To select an export option, click the check

box next to the desired option. An option is selected when an "X" appears in the check box.

The following option is supported:

**Delete snapshot -** When enabled, the **Snapshot Export Utility** deletes the snapshot after it has been exported. Before deleting the snapshot, the user is explicitly asked if the snapshot should be deleted.

# File name

Displays the name and approximate size, in Megabytes, of the export file to be generated by the **Snapshot Export Utility**. The export file name is made up of the file name of the selected snapshot and the file extension which corresponds with the selected export file format (e.g., .XLS for Excel format). This field is display-only.

In the middle of the **Snapshot Export Utility** screen appears the "Snapshot Information" group. Data fields in this group pertain to the selected snapshot, and are display-only. The snapshot information group contains the following:

#### Snapshot File Name

This field displays the name of the snapshot file selected for deletion. A snapshot file is selected for deletion using the fields provided in the **Current snapshot files** section. The file's drive, directory and file name are displayed. For example, **d:\snap1.snp**. A snapshot file name is composed of the word SNAP, a sequential number generated by SIGMA NE, and the file extension .SNP.

# Trigger time

Time when the snapshot was generated. A snapshot can be generated in several ways. Refer to sections 4.2, 4.3 and 4.4 for more information about generating a snapshot.

#### Trigger event

Type of event (manual or automatic) used to generate snapshots. The Trigger Event for Go or Capture snapshots is "Manual". The Trigger Event for Trigger Variable snapshots is "Automatic".

# Trigger description

The snapshot's description text. Snapshot descriptions are entered by the user in several ways. Refer to sections 4.3 and 4.4 for more information on entering snapshot descriptions.

#### Variable count

The number of variables in the snapshot. Snapshots usually contain all trended variables, therefore the count which appears here is usually the number of trended variables. However, a snapshot that is exported by the Snapshot Export Utility (selecting the binary file format option) may have only a subset of these variables, and, therefore, the count which appears here may be less than the number of trended variables.

## Snapshot duration

The length of time in the snapshot in HH:MM:SS format. This is based on the trend sample interval and the number of samples per variable in the snapshot (see below).

# Samples per variable

The number of samples for each variable in the snapshot. Also, the trend sample interval is displayed here.

At the bottom of the Snapshot Export Utility screen appears the "Variable Selection" group. Data fields in this group pertain to which variables the Snapshot Export Utility exports from the selected snapshot file. All variables in the snapshot may be exported, or only a subset. The snapshot is selected from the **Available snapshots** group. The variable selection group contains the following:

#### Variables not to be exported

List of variables from the snapshot which the Snapshot Export Utility does not export. When a snapshot is selected, all of its variables appear in this list (i.e., no variables are selected for exporting). Double-clicking a variable in this list removes it from the list and adds it to the **Variables to be exported** list. If more variables are in the snapshot than can fit in the list box, then a scroll bar appears at the right side of the list.

# Variables to be exported

List of variables from the snapshot which the Snapshot Export Utility does export. When a snapshot is selected, this list box is empty. Variables must be added to this list from the **Variables not to be exported** list. Double-clicking a variable in this list removes it from the list and returns it to the **Variables not to be exported** list. If more variables are added to this list than can fit in the list box, then a scroll bar appears at the right side of the list.

# Save list

Allows the list of variables in the **Variables to be exported** list to be saved in order to be recalled at a later time using the **Recall list** push-button (see below). To save the list, click this push-button to display the **Save List To File** screen. This screen contains the following:

- **File name** The name of the file in which to save the list of variables. The file extension cannot be entered, and is defined as .EXP. To specify the name of the file, click this field, and then type the name.
- Available files List of variable list files (i.e., those with the .EXP file extension) which already exist in the path displayed by the **Path** field (see below). To select one of the listed files as the file in which to save the list of variables, click the desired file; its name then appears in the **File name** field. If more files are found in the path than can fit in the list box, then a scroll bar appears at the right side of the list.
- **Path** Path where the **Save List To File** screen looks for variable list files (i.e., those with the .EXP file extension) already created. This field is display-only.
- **OK** Saves the list of variables in the variable list file specified in the **File name** field, and then returns to the Snapshot Export Utility screen. To save the list, click this push-button.
- **Cancel** Returns to the Snapshot Export Utility screen without saving the list of variables. To return without saving the list, click this push-button.

# **Recall list**

Allows a list of variables saved using the **Save list** push-button (see above) to be recalled into the **Variables to be exported** list. A variable is recalled only if a match for it is found in the **Variables not to be exported** list. When a variable is recalled, it is removed from the **Variables not to be exported** list and added to the **Variables to be exported** list. To recall a list, click this push-button to display the **Recall List From File** screen. This screen contains the following:

- **File name** The name of the file from which to recall the list of variables. The file extension cannot be entered, and is defined as .EXP. To specify the name of the file, click on this field, and then type the name.
- Available files List of variable list files (i.e., those with the .EXP file extension) which already exist in the path displayed by the **Path** field (see below). To select one of the listed files as the file from which to recall the list of variables, click the desired file; its name then appears in the **File name** field. If more files are found in the path than can fit in the list box, then a scroll bar appears at the right side of the list.
- **Path** Path where the **Recall List From File** screen looks for variable list files (i.e., those with the .EXP file extension) already created. This field is display-only.
- **OK** Recalls the list of variables from the variable list file specified in the **File name** field, and then returns to the **Snapshot Export Utility** screen. To recall the list, click on this push-button.
- **Delete** Deletes the variable list file specified in the **File name** field. The **Recall List From File** screen remains active after deletion. To delete the file, click this push-button.
- **Cancel** Returns to the **Snapshot Export Utility** screen without recalling any list of variables. To return without recalling, click this push-button.

# Select options

These options allow groups of variables to be moved between the **Variables not to be exported** and the **Variables to be exported** lists. The groups which are moved are determined by the criteria specified by these fields. The following are provided:

- All variables Indicates that all variables in the specified list are moved when the Add or Remove push-button is clicked on.
- All variables selected check box When this check box is enabled, and when the All variables radio button is selected, only those variables in the list which are marked as selected are moved when the Add or Remove push-button is clicked. To toggle this option, click the check box. This option is selected when an "X" appears in the check box. Variables in the list are selected by clicking them.
- Starting with Indicates that only variables in the specified list whose names start with the text entered in the field next to the radio button are moved when the Add or Remove push-button is clicked. For example, if the text in the field is A00\_, then only variables starting with A00\_ are moved. To select this criterion, click its radio button.
- Ending with Indicates that only variables in the list whose names end with the text entered in the field next to the radio button are moved when the Add or Remove push-button is clicked. For example, if the text in the field is CUR\_FDBK\_, then only variables ending with CUR\_FDBK\_ are moved. To select this criterion, click its radio button.
- Add This push-button allows variables which match the criteria specified by these fields to be added to the Variables to be exported list. When a variable is added to the Variables to be exported list, it is removed from the Variables not to be exported list. Click this push-button to add the variables.
- Remove This push-button allows variables which match the criteria specified by these fields to be removed from the Variables to be exported list. When a variable is removed from the Variables to be exported list, it is returned to the Variables not to be exported list. Click on this push-button to remove matching variables.

At the bottom of the Snapshot Export Utility screen appear the following:

# Export push-button

Click this push-button to initiate the export of the selected snapshot. The snapshot is selected from the **Available snapshots** group. The export file is written in the format specified by the **Export format** radio buttons in the **Export destination** group. The export file is written to the drive and directory specified in the **Export destination** group. The export file contains those variables specified in the **Variables to be exported** list. Depending on the specified format and destination, exporting the snapshot can take a long time (10+ minutes). After the snapshot has been exported, the **Snapshot Export Utility** screen remains active and another snapshot can be exported.

# Return push-button

Click this push-button to exit the **Snapshot Export Utility** screen and return to the SIGMA screen from which the Snapshot Export Utility was entered.

# Selecting Variables with the Export Utility

The following are the steps for exporting snapshot files (refer to figure 4-6):

- 1. Enter the Export Utility from the **Snapshot** pull down menu or the **Snapshot File Maintenance Screen**.
- 2. Locate the desired snapshot by selecting the appropriate drive and directory in the "Available snapshots:" section of the screen.
- 3. Verify the information displayed in the "Snapshot Information" group pertains to the snapshot file needed.
- 4. Specify the drive and directory to which the snapshot file should be exported in the "Export destination" section of the screen.
- 5. Select a file format by using the **Export Format** radio buttons. Then, select whether to delete the snapshot after it has been exported or not from the **Export Options** group.

6. Scroll through the list in the **Variable not to be exported** field. Determine which variables should be exported.

# IMPORTANT

If groups of variables with similar characteristics need to be exported, use the **Select options** group.

7. For each variable found, click the item to highlight it, then click the **Add** to add it to the **Variables to be exported** field.

# IMPORTANT

If a variable needs to be removed from the list, click it and click the **Remove** push-button.

8. When all variables for exporting are listed in the **Variables to be exported** field, click the **Export** push-button. The snapshot file is exported as specified.

# Summary

This chapter has highlighted the snapshot process. Snapshots are useful for saving trended data for examination at a later time. Refer to Chapter 3 for more information on Trending.

4.1 Snapshot Overview	71
4.2 Go Snapshots	
4.2.1 Configuring Go Snapshots	73
4.2.2 Generating Go Snapshots	
4.3 Capture Snapshots	77
4.4 Trigger Variable Snapshots	
4.5 Snapshot File Maintenance	79
4.5.1 Deleting Local Files with the File Maintenance Screen	
4.5.2 Deleting Server Files with the File Maintenance Screen	
4.6 Snapshot Export Utility	
4.6.1 Selecting Variables with the Export Utility	
4.7 Summary	
Figure 4-1 The Go Snapshot Configuration Window	
Figure 4-2 The Go Window	75
Figure 4-3 Capture Window	
Figure 4-4 The Trigger Window	
Figure 4-5 The Snapshot File Maintenance Screen	
Figure 4-6 The SIGMA Snapshot Export Utility Screen	

# Chapter 5

# Alarms and Faults System

This chapter describes the SIGMA NE Alarms/Faults System. Two screens make up the SIGMA NE Alarms/Faults System. They are:

- The Alarm/Fault Summary Screen This screen displays alarms and faults that have occurred most recently and that have not been acknowledged. Users are notified that an exception has taken place when the main menu bar of the SIGMA turns red. By accessing this screen, a user can locate where the alarm or fault occurred and acknowledge it happened.
- The Event History Screen This screen displays operator actions as well as alarms and faults. This screen is used to review the exceptions that have occurred in the past. By accessing this screen, a user can select filter parameters for recording alarms and faults. A user can also print a list of historical events.

# Alarm/Fault Overview

The SIGMA NE Alarm/Fault system monitors and displays diagnostic information about the running process. This diagnostic information is generally referred to as "exceptions." The following types of exceptions are monitored by the system:

- Alarm a non-fatal exception which usually allows the process to continue running. For example, "Oil level low".
- **Fault** a fatal exception which usually stops part or all of the process. For example, "Oil tank empty".
- **Operator action** an operator-initiated exception which affects part or all of the process. For example, "Pumps started via benchboard".

Each exception monitored by the system can be in either one of the following states:

- Active the exception has occurred, but not yet cleared.
- **Inactive** the exception has cleared, or not yet occurred.

Each exception's state is detected by the system using one of the following senses:

- **High sense** exception becomes active (occurs) based on the rising edge of its digital signal (boolean variable); becomes inactive (clears) based on the falling edge (i.e., 1 = active, 0 = inactive). Most exceptions use this sense.
- **Low sense** exception becomes active (occurs) based on the falling edge of its digital signal (boolean variable); becomes inactive (clears) based on the rising edge (i.e., 0 = active, 1 = inactive).

In addition to the states described above, the system permits the operator to "acknowledge" exceptions. Acknowledgment is an indication that an exception which has occurred has been noted by the operator.

If an alarm or fault occurs, the main menu bar turns red. This signal, which happens no matter where a user is in SIGMA, warns that something has occurred that has caused an alarm or fault to occur. When an alarm or fault occurs, a user should access the **Alarm/Fault Summary Screen** (refer to section 5.1).

The **Alarm/Fault Summary Screen** displays a list of exceptions which have taken place. Exceptions on the list are in one of three conditions:

- · Active, not acknowledged
- · Active, acknowledged
- · Cleared (resolved) not acknowledged

After viewing the list, a user must take some action towards correcting the problems, so the alarms or faults can be removed from the list. Usually the first step is to acknowledge the exceptions. Acknowledgement can be performed before or after the alarm or fault has been cleared. Only when an exception has cleared and been acknowledged by the operator is it removed from the **Alarm/Fault Summary Screen**.

The Event History Screen also records operator actions, which do not appear on the **Fault/Alarm Summary Screen** These exceptions may be helpful in determining what caused another exception to happen.

# **Color Descriptions of Exceptions**

To identify exceptions more easily when they are in a list, the following colors are used for text and background:

- · Black text on a Yellow background Alarm is currently active.
- *Yellow* text on a *Black* background Alarm has been cleared (no longer active), but has not been acknowledged by the operator.
- · Black text on a Red background Fault is currently active.
- *Red* text on a *Black* background Fault has been cleared (no longer active), but has not been acknowledged by the operator.
- *Light blue (Cya*n) text and *Black* background Operator action has occurred; only appears in the Event History Screen.

Once an alarm or fault has been cleared and acknowledged, it no longer appears on the Alarm/Fault Summary Screen.

			SIGMA U	niversal Op	perator Interface 👘			
<u>Overview!</u>	Section!	SPAD!	<u>T</u> rend!	<u>A</u> larm/Flt	<u>S</u> napshot			
		Ala	arm/F	ault S	ummary	C	7-12-94	08:48
						Acknow	ledge	
Exception Ti	me / Mess	sage	٦	Гуре	Clear o	r Acknow	ledge Tim	ie
Jul 07, 1994-08:0 BR_COM_WRN_	4:54 AM	PMI C	ALARM_HIC	H ATION WARNI	Acknowledge NG	ed Jul 12, 1	994 08:47:50	6 AM _ 1
Jul 07, 1994_08:0 BR_CLK_WRN_	4:54 AM	م CLOCI	NLARM_HIC K SYNC WA	SH ARNING	Acknowledge	ed Jul 12, 1	994 08:47:50	6 AM
Jul 07, 1994-08:0 BR_RAL_WRN	4:54 AM	A RAIL C	ALARM_HIC	SH ATION WARNI	Acknowledge NG	ed Jul 12, 1	994 08:47:50	6 AM
Jul 07, 1994_08:0 BR_FAN_WRN_	4:54 AM	A PMLEA	ALARM_HIC	SH ARNING	Acknowledge	ed Jul 12, 1	994 08:47:50	6 AM
Jul 07, 1994_08:0 BR_OT_WRN_	4:54 AM	A OVER T	ALARM_HIC	H JRE WARNING	Acknowledge	ed Jul 12, 1	994 08:47:50	6 AM
Jul 07, 1994_08:0 BR_SHR_WRN_	4:54 AM	A LOAD	ALARM_HIC SHARING W	SH /ARNING	Acknowledge	ed Jul 12, 1	994 08:47:50	6 AM
Jul 07, 1994_08:0 BR_RIL_WRN_	4:54 AM	A REFERE	ALARM_HIC	SH IIT WARNING	Acknowledge	ed Jul 12, 1	994 08:47:50	6 AM
Jul 07, 1994_08:0 BR_VR_WRN_	4:54 AM	A VOLTA	ALARM_HIC	sh Warning	Acknowledge	ed Jul 12, 1	994 08:47:50	6 AM
Jul 07, 1994_08:0 BR_UV_WRN_	4:54 AM	A DC BUS	ALARM_HIC UNDER VO	SH OLTAGE WARN	Acknowledge ING	ed Jul 12, 1	994 08:47:50	6 AM
Jul 07, 1994_08:0 BR_OV_WRN_	4:54 AM	A DC BUS	ALARM_HIC S OVER VOI	SH LTAGE WARNI	Acknowledge NG	ed Jul 12, 1	994 08:47:50	6 AM
Jul 07, 1994-08:0 BR_COM_FLT_	4:54 AM	COMM	FAULT_HIG	H N LOSS FA <mark>UL</mark> T	Acknowledg	ed Jul 12, 1	994 08:47:50	6 AM
Jul 07, 1994_08:0 BR_RUN_FLT_	4:54 AM	UDC RU	FAULT_HIG	H	Acknowledg	ed Jul 12, 1	994 08:47:50	i AM

# The Alarm/Fault Summary Screen

Figure 5-1 The Alarm/Fault Summary Screen

Clicking the **Fault Summary** option from the **Alarm/Flt** pull-down menu displays the **Alarm/Fault Summary Screen**, as shown in Figure 5-1. When the Alarm/Fault Summary Screen appears, a list of exceptions automatically appears. This screen may also be accessed from a status push-button on the **Drive Overview Screen** (refer to Figure 6-1) if its associated section is non-distributed power.

If the list is longer than one screen, a scroll bar appears at the right side of the screen. Scroll through a list by clicking the up or down arrows, or by moving the scroll bar up or down in the scroll field.

The screen description below explains how the Alarm/Fault Summary Screen is designed. Using this screen may help determine where the problem is located, when it occurred, and how severe it is.

# **Screen Description**

When an alarm or fault exists, it appears as a two-line item in the list. The line items are displayed in a three column format. The following describes each column:

# Exception Time/Message

This column contains the date and time the exception occurred on the first line and the variable name and message associated with the exception on the second line. The first line contains the date and time the event was detected. The second line contains the variable name.

# Туре

The "Type" column contains the sense type of the variable affected by the alarm or fault. This information also determines the severity of the alarm or fault.

# Clear or Acknowledge Time

If the exception has been acknowledged, this column contains the acknowledgement date and time. If an exception was cleared but not acknowledged, this column contains the time the event was cleared.

To acknowledge the exceptions on Alarm/Fault Summary screen, the following push-button is displayed:

# Acknowledge push-button

Clicking this push-button acknowledges all of the alarms and faults that have not been acknowledged. As a result, SIGMA updates the list by removing all cleared events from the list. In addition, the acknowledgement time is added to the right-hand column of any exceptions that were previously unacknowledged.

		5	SIGMA U	niversal Op	perator Inte <mark>r</mark> fac	e			
<u>0</u> verview! <u>9</u>	Section!	S <u>P</u> AD!	<u>T</u> rend!	<u>A</u> larm/Flt	<u>S</u> napshot				
	Event History 07-12-94 08:50								
<u>P</u> rint	<u>C</u> ancel	Print		No Act	ive Filter		Setup <u>F</u> ilter		
Exception Tin	ne / Messa	ge	Ту	pe	Clear	Time	Acknowledge	Time	
Jul 07, 1994-08:04 BR_COM_WRN_	1:54 AM	AL PMI CO	ARM_HIG	iH ATION WARNIN	IG		Jul 12, 08:47:56 Al	M 🛨	
Jul 07, 1994-08:04 BR_CLK_WRN_	4:54 AM	AL CLOCK	<mark>.ARM_HIG</mark> SYNC WA	ih RNING			Jul 12, 08:47:56 Al	M	
Jul 07, 1994-08:04 BR_RAL_WRN	4:54 AM	AL RAIL CO	ARM_HIG	H ATION WARNIN	łG		Jul 12, 08:47:56 Al	M	
Jul 07, 1994-08:04 BR FAN WRN	4:54 AM	AL PMI FAN	. <mark>ARM_HIG</mark> I LOSS W/	ih Arning			Jul 12, 08:47:56 Al	M	
Jul 07, 1994-08:04 BR_OT_WRN	4:54 AM	AL OVER TE	ARM_HIG	ih Jre Warning			Jul 12, 08:47:56 Al	M	
Jul 07, 1994-08:04 BR_SHR_WRN	4:54 AM	AL LOAD SI	. <mark>ARM_HIG</mark> HARING W	ih /Arning			Jul 12, 08:47:56 Al	M	
Jul 07, 1994-08:04 BR_RIL_WRN	4:54 AM	AL REFEREN	ARM_HIG	ih It warning			Jul 12, 08:47:56 Al	M	
Jul 07, 1994-08:04 BR_VR_WRN	4:54 AM		ARM_HIG	ih Warning			Jul 12, 08:47:56 Al	M	
Jul 07, 1994-08:04 BR_UV_WRN	4:54 AM	AL DC BUS I	ARM_HIG	iH L TAGE WARN	ING		Jul 12, 08:47:56 Al	M	
Jul 07, 1994-08:04 BR_OV_WRN	4:54 AM	AL DC BUS	ARM_HIG	iH TAGE WARNII	NG		Jul 12, 08:47:56 Al	M	
Jul 07, 1994-08:04 BR_COM_FLT	1:54 AM	F/ COMML	AULT_HIG	H 1 LOSS FAULT			Jul 12, 08:47:56 Al	M	
Jul 07, 1994 08:04 BR_RUN_FLT_	4:54 AM	F/ UDC RUN	AULT_HIG	H			Jul 12, 08:47:56 Al	M 🕴	

# The Event History Screen

Figure 5-2 Event History Screen

Clicking the **Event History** option from **Alarm/Flt** pull-down menu displays the **Event History** screen, as shown in Figure 5-2. The Event History screen displays all last events (up to 4000) which have occurred, cleared, or been acknowledged. The display lists the events in the same manner as the **Alarm/Fault Summary** Screen (refer to section 5.1). However exceptions which are both cleared and acknowledged remain in the list. When the Event Summary Screen has reached the maximum number of events it can display, it removes the oldest events as new events are added to the list.

# **Screen Description**

The list of events appearing in the Event History Screen is designed in the same column format as the Alarm/Fault Summary Screen. However, the Event History Screen contains four columns instead of three. The following are descriptions of the columns which make up the list:

# Exception Time/Message

This column contains the date and time the event occurred on the first line and the variable name and message associated with the event on the second line. The second line contains the variable name.

# Type

The "Type" column contains the event type of the variable. This information helps determine the severity of the alarm or fault.

# Clear Time

This column contains the time the event cleared. If it has not been cleared, this column is blank.

# Acknowledge Time

This column contains the acknowledgement date and time if the event has been acknowledged.

The Event History Screen contains three push-buttons and a display-only field at the top of the screen:

# Print push-button

When the **Print** push-button is selected, the "Event History Print Setup" window appears. This allows users to print the entire Event History list or a section of the list. Refer to section 5.4.2 for more information on the "Event History Print Setup" window.

# Note

If a filter is currently active then the printed events are also filtered.

# Cancel Print push-button

The **Cancel Print** push-button terminates a list that is currently printing. There may be a few print jobs queued up, or waiting to print, but only the job that is currently printing is canceled .

# Filter text

This field displays the filter parameters established using the **Event History Filter Setup** screen. If a filter has not been established, the text "No Active Filter" displays.

# Setup Filter push-button

This push-button provides access to the **Event History Filter Setup** screen. This screen is used for entering filter configuration information. Refer to section 5.4.1 for more information on the Event History Filter Setup screen.

# **Filtering Events**



Figure 5-3 The Event History Filter Setup Screen

Clicking the **Setup Filter** push-button displays the **Event History Filter Setup** screen, as shown in Figure 5-3. This screen allows users to set up the event type, time span, and/or tagname parameters for filtering events.

#### Screen Description

The Event History Filter Setup Screen is divided into multiple sections. Each section is explained in detail below.

The "Event Type Filter" section allows users to filter events based on the event type of variables. When using the "Event Type Filter" section, the user can indicate that one, more than one, or all of the event types should be included in the filter. To make a selection, position the cursor in the check box to the left of the event type and click once. An "X" appears to indicate the event type has been included in the filter.

The "Time Span Filter" section is designed for specifying a date and time range. This section contains the following items:

# Use Time Span Filter check box

Selecting this check box enables the date and time filters entered in the **Begin From** and **To** fields. An "X" in this check box indicates the option has been enabled.

## Begin From

Entering a date and time in this field, establishes the beginning date/time of the range used for filtering events. This field automatically defaults to the current date and time. By placing the cursor in the field, a date can be typed in DD-MMM-YY format and the time in HH:MM:SS format. To adjust the date or time in small increments, place the cursor in this field and use the **Day**, **Month**, **Year**, **Hours**, **Minutes** or **Seconds** arrow buttons.

# То

Entering a date and time in this field establishes the ending date/time of the range used for filtering events. This field automatically defaults to the current date and time. By placing the cursor in the field, a date can be typed in DD-MMM-YY format and the time in HH:MM:SS format. To adjust the date or time in small increments, place the cursor in this field and use the **Day, Month, Year, Hours, Minutes** or **Seconds** arrow buttons.

# Day, Month, Year, Hours, Minutes, Seconds arrow buttons

These arrow buttons allow a user to make small adjustments to the date and time displayed in the **Begin From** and **To** fields. By clicking the up or down arrow for any of the items, the information displayed is adjusted accordingly. Note that the cursor must initially be placed in either the **Begin From** or **To** field, before using these arrow buttons. This indicates which field is to be adjusted.

In the middle of the Event History Filter Setup screen is a "Sort Order" section.

# Ascending or Descending radio buttons

Click either radio button to specify how the events should be displayed in the Event History screen. Users must specify whether to present the events in **Ascending** (the oldest event first) or **Descending** order (the recent event first).

The "Tagname[s] Filter" section allows users to select the specific tagnames (variable names) which should appear in the Event History screen. The following items appear in the "Tagname[s] Filter" section.

## Use Tagname[s] Filter check box

Select this check box to enable the tagnames filter according to the tagnames appearing in the **Selected Tagnames** field. An "X" in this check box indicates that this option has been enabled.

#### Add All Starting With

This field allows the user to specify a character string each tagname must start with in order to be placed in the **Selected Tagnames** field. To use this field, enter a letter or series of letters which represents the first character(s) of the tagnames desired. Press <Enter>. The tagnames beginning with the letters automatically appear in the **Selected Tagnames** field.

#### Clear Selected List push-button

Clicking this push-button clears the list of tagnames in the **Selected Tagnames** column field.

# Tagnames Available

This field displays a list of all event tagnames (variable names). Double-click on a desired tagname to move it to the **Selected Tagnames** field.

# Selected Tagnames

This field displays the list of tagnames which should appear in the **Event History** screen. Tagnames are moved to this list from the **Tagnames Available** field or added with the **Add All Starting With** field. To clear all tagnames from this field, click the **Clear Selected List** push-button. A tagname can be removed from this list by double-clicking on it.

The following three push-buttons appear in the top right of the Event History Filter Setup screen:

# **OK** push-button

Clicking this push-button exits the Event History Filter Setup screen and re-displays the Event History screen with events filtered according to the specified parameters.

## Cancel push-button

Clicking this push-button cancels the actions performed while in this screen and returns the user to the **Event History** screen.

# Reset push-button

Clicking this push-button resets the Event History Filter Setup screen back to the condition it was in before any changes where made.

# **Printing an Event List**



Figure 5-4 The Event History Print Setup Window

Clicking the **Print** push-button displays the "Event History Print Setup" windows shown in Figure 5-4. This window allows users to enter a specific number of events to print and the location within the list from which to start printing. Printing a list of events may provide further diagnostic information.

# IMPORTANT

If a filter is currently active, then the printed events are filtered also.

#### Screen Description

The following are the parameters contained in the "Event History Print Setup" window:

# Enter the number of events to print

This field is used to specify the number of events to print from the **Event History Screen**. It is used in conjunction with the **Start Position** radio buttons. This field defaults to 12, which is exactly one page of events. When a start position is established, the user can enter the number of events to print from that point using this field. If this field is left blank, all of the events contained in the list are printed.

# Start Position radio buttons

These radio buttons indicate where to start printing events from. There are two choices: the **Beginning of List** and the **Current Position**. Choosing the Beginning of List option prints the event list starting from the first event in the list. To use the Current Position option, make sure the cursor is located exactly at the desired event in the Event History screen.

# Print push-button

Clicking this push-button initiates the printing command. Depending upon the number of events being printed, this command may take a while to complete. If printing needs to be terminated, the **Cancel Print** push-button, located in the Event History Screen, can be used.

# Cancel push-button

Clicking this push-button closes the "Event History Print Setup" window and returns the user to the Event History Screen.
# Summary

Monitoring and fixing alarms and faults are important parts of insuring that a process runs smoothly and properly. The Alarm/Fault Screen and the Event History Screen allow a user to monitor them and obtain the necessary information to address them. Exceptions should not be taken lightly, for they can indicate some deeper problem which may occur later and affect the efficiency of a process or cause injury to coworkers.

5.1	Alarm/Fault Overview	
5.2	Color Descriptions of Exceptions	
5.3	The Alarm/Fault Summary Screen	
5.4	The Event History Screen	
5.4.	Filtering Events	
5.4.2	2 Printing an Event List	
5.5	Summary	
Figure 5-	<b>1</b> The Alarm/Fault Summary Screen	
Figure 5-	2 Event History Screen	
Figure 5-	<b>3</b> The Event History Filter Setup Screen	
Figure 5-	4 The Event History Print Setup Window	

# **Chapter 6**

# **Drive Overview Screen and Support Screens**

The Drive Overview Screen and its support screens are components of the SIGMA UOI package. These screens allow users to monitor and control the drives for a machine or system. This chapter highlights the common features of these screens. However, when using the Drive Overview Screen or a support screen, a user may notice functions and features documented in this chapter which are not part of their system. This is because there are many options available with the Drive Overview package which may not be needed or appropriate for a particular application. Also the user applications may contain custom, application-specific screens, which are not documented in this manual. The following screens are documented in this chapter:

- **Drive Overview Screen** This screen allows users to monitor the status of drives. Included with this screen are section control windows, bar charts and/or diagnostic screens.
- Section Screen This screen allows users to control drives by modifying their setpoint values or by executing simple commands such as Jog, Run, and Stop.
- **Speed and Draw (SPAD) Screen** This screen allows users to calculate draw values using variable data.
- **PMI Diagnostic Screens** These screens display the status of card LED's on the Power Module Interface (PMI) racks. GV3000 and FP3000 drives don't have PMI racks with diagnostic LEDs. In addition to an illustration, a grid of alarms and faults appears for reference.

All of the screens in this chapter are configured using the **Overview Screen Configuration Utility**. For more information on this utility, refer to Chapter 6, Configuring the Drive Overview Screen and Support Screens in the SIGMA Developers Manual.

The	Drive	Overview	Screen
-----	-------	----------	--------

	SIGMA Univ	versal Operator	Interface		
Overview! Section! SPAD!	Trend! A	larm/Fit <u>S</u> naps	shot		
				07-12-	94 07:49
Entry Speed 0.0 FPM	Process S	peed 0.00	FPM Delivery	Speed	0.0 <sub>FPM</sub>
Section	Status	Setpoint	Speed T	ension	Load %
Payoff 🗕 🕇	Alarm	0.0 RPM	0.0		0
Top Work Roll	Warning	0.0	0.0	0.0	0
Bottom Work Roll	JOG	0.0 RPM	0.0	0.0	0
Coiling Reel	READY	0.0	0.0	0.0	0
OS Screws	RUN	0.0	0.0	0.0	0
DS Screws	READY	0.0	0.0	0.0	0
Tilter	<mark>NARNING</mark>		0.0	0.0	0
Entry Coil Car	ALARM	0.0	0.0		
Coil Prep Shear	JOG				
Entry Chain Conv 🔹				0.0	

Figure 6-1 The Drive Overview Screen

Clicking the **Overview!** option from the **Main Menu** displays the **Drive Overview Screen**, as shown in Figure 6-1. The Drive Overview Screen allows users to monitor the current status of the displayed drives. The following documentation covers the features common to the Drive Overview Screen only.

The Drive Overview Screen is divided into five parts:

- Header Section This section contains two rows. The first row displays a title bar with the Rockwell Automation logo and/or the name of the applicable machine, the name of the process line, and a date and time display. The second row contains a data display bar. This bar can be configured to display up to three variables which a user wants to monitor regularly. For example, section speeds can be displayed. A user can click the Rockwell Automation logo and view license information. All of this information is display-only.
- Section column This column contains a scrollable list of drive section names. 10 drive sections are displayed at a time. The Drive Overview screen displays drive data for each drive section in the other columns of the screen, which are described below. A section name may appear as a display-only inset panel or as a push-button. Clicking the push-button displays the "Section Control" window for the drive section. This window allows the operator to assign a setpoint value, and perform various drive control operations (e.g., jog, start, stop). Refer to Section 6.1.3 for more information on section control windows.
- Status column This column displays the current status of each drive listed in the Section column. The status (e.g., Running, Ready, Faulted) appears on a pushbutton. Clicking the push-button displays the SIGMA drive diagnostic screen appropriate for the drive being monitored. Refer to Section 6.1.2 for more information on the types of SIGMA drives diagnostics screens and how to use them.
- Setpoint column This column contains the current drive setpoint value for each drive listed in the Section column. The setpoint value is display-only. It may be modified by the operator only if access to the Section Control window is provided for the drive in the Section column (see Figure 6-1).
- **Feedback** columns These columns are the three columns which appear in the lower right portion of the Drive Overview screen. Any of these columns may be unused. A Feedback column displays the value of a drive variable (e.g., drive speed in FPM) for each drive section listed in the Section column. The title of a Feedback column appears at the top of the column as a push-button. Clicking this push-button displays the "Bar Chart" window for variables in the column. Refer to Section 6.1.1, "Viewing Bar Charts" for more information.

Note that values in a Feedback column may be "offset" to display values which are between two adjacent sections. For example, refer to the **Tension** column in Figure 6-1. In this case, the tension feedback values are shown "offset" between the two sections where the tension value is generated.

If a Drive section does not have a corresponding value in one of the feedback columns, then either it has not been configured correctly or no corresponding feedback value exists. Refer to the **Load** column for the last three viewable drive sections in Figure 6-1.

# **Viewing Bar Charts**



Figure 6-2 A Bar Chart Window

Clicking the title push-button of any of the three **Feedback** columns displays the "Bar Chart" window shown in Figure 6-2. The "Bar Chart" window displays a bar graph of the feedback value for each drive listed in the **Section** column. To the left of each bar graph, the feedback value is displayed numerically. This window allows a user to view value information both graphically and numerically. If the information for the **Feedback** column is "offset" in the Drive Overview screen, the bar chart is offset in this screen also. The information in this window is display-only. Clicking once the **Return** push-button redisplays the **Drive Overview** screen.

# **Viewing Distributive Power Diagnostic Screens**

Clicking a push-button in the **Status** column displays the appropriate Distributive Power Diagnostic Screen for the drive section. The following Distributive Power Diagnostic Screens are shown and discussed in the following sections of this manual:

- SD3000 (Section 6.1.2.2)
- SD3000 Regen (Section 6.1.2.3)
- SA3000 (Section 6.1.2.4)
- SA3000 Parallel (Section 6.1.2.5)
- SA500 Servo (Section 6.1.2.6)
- SB3000 Parallel (Section 6.1.2.7)
- GV3000 A-C (Section 6.1.2.8)
- FP3000 D-C (Section 6.1.2.9)
- SA3100 (Section 6.1.2.10)
- AB1336 (Section 6.1.2.11)

If no appropriate drive diagnostic screen exists for a drive section, then the Alarm/Fault Screen is displayed. For information on this screen, refer to Chapter 5, Alarms and Faults System.

Distributive Power Diagnostic screens may display:

- an expanded drawing of the PMI rack and its diagnostic LEDs
- a diagnostic grid showing the states (active or inactive) of drive faults and alarms
- a diagnostic schematic showing states (short or open) for SCR (DC) or IGBT (AC) output devices

The diagnostic grid shows:

- green if a fault or alarm is inactive
- yellow if a alarm is active
- red if a fault is active

The diagnostic schematic shows the states of an output device (SCR for DC and IGBT for AC). The schematic for DC (SCRs) is:

- green when the device is working
- red when the failed device has a short
- yellow when the failed device is open.

The schematic for AC (IGBT) is:

- green when the device is working
- red when the device causes an overcurrent (IOC)
- yellow when there is a phase imbalance (available only on AC Parallel)

In the menu bar of the Distributive Power Diagnostic Screen appears 2 options:

- **Help!** Clicking this option displays the "Help Menu" window for the section. This window contains a list of all the items for which a help dialog window exists. From a help dialog box a user can enter notes about a particular item. Refer to Section 6.1.2.1 for more information about the Help option.
- **Return!** Clicking this option redisplays the **Drive Overview** screen.

# **The Help Option**



Figure 6-3 The Help Menu

Clicking **Help!** from the menu displays a "Help Menu" window (shown in Figure 6-3) with a list of all drive faults and alarms. This window lets the user:

- view an explanation of each drive fault or alarm
- enter, view or print notes pertaining to each drive fault or alarm



SIGMA Universal Operator Interface - [PMI SD3000 Regen Diagnostics]

Figure 6-4 The Help Text

The following lists the steps for:

- viewing drive fault and alarm explanations
- viewing, entering, or printing notes for a drive fault or alarm item.
- 1. Click the **Help!** option located in the menu bar to display the "Help Menu" window. This window lists all drive faults and alarms.
- 2. Double-click a fault or alarm item to display a Help Dialog box (shown in Figure 6-4) containing an explanation of that item.

### IMPORTANT

The PMI LED item displays a list of defined diagnostic LEDs. Double-click a diagnostic LED to display a Help Dialog box (shown in Figure 6-4) containing an explanation of that item.

3. Click the **Note** push-button to display the "Note" window. Refer to Figure 6-5. Notes pertaining to the drive can be read, entered and printed through this window.





Figure 6-5 The Note Window

- 4. When finished with a help dialog box or a "Note" window, click the **Return!** push-button to return to the previous window.
- 5. To view an explanation or enter, view or print notes pertaining to other items, repeat steps 1 through 3. To redisplay the Distributive Power Diagnostic Screen, click the **Return** pushbutton.



# The PMI SD3000 Non-Regen Diagnostic Screen

Figure 6-6 The PMI SD3000 Diagnostics Screen

The PMI SD3000 Diagnostics screen shown in Figure 6-6 displays diagnostic information for an

SD3000 drive. This diagnostic screen information consist of:

- an expanded drawing of PMI DC6 rack and its diagnostic LEDs
- a diagnostic grid showing the states (active or inactive) of drive faults and alarms
- a diagnostic schematic showing states (short or open) for SCR (DC) output devices

For more information on this diagnostic screen information, refer to Section 6.1.2 "Viewing Distributive Power Diagnostic Screens". For more information on the SD3000 drive, refer to the AutoMax Distributive Power System manual, S-3005.



### The PMI SD3000 Regen Diagnostic Screen

Figure 6-7 The SD3000 Regen Diagnostics Screen

The SD3000 Regen Diagnostics screen, shown in Figure 6-7, displays the diagnostic information for an SD3000 Regen drive. This diagnostic screen information consists of:

- an expanded drawing of PMI DC6R rack and its diagnostic LEDs
- a diagnostic grid showing the states (active or inactive) of drive faults and alarms
- a diagnostic schematic showing states (short or open) for SCR (DC) output devices

For more information on this diagnostic screen information, refer to Section 6.1.2 "Viewing Distributive Power Diagnostic Screens". For more information on the SD3000 drive, refer to the AutoMax Distributive Power System manual, S-3005.

### The PMI SA3000 Diagnostic Screen



Figure 6-8 The SA3000 Diagnostics Screen

The SA3000 Diagnostics screen, shown in Figure 6-8, displays the diagnostic information for an SA3000 medium power drive. This diagnostic screen information consist of:

- an expanded drawing of PMI AC rack and its diagnostic LEDs
- a diagnostic grid showing the states (active or inactive) of drive faults and alarms
- a display of the PTM Fault # and message
- a diagnostic schematic showing states (short or open) for IGBT (AC) output devices

For more information on this diagnostic screen information, refer to Section 6.1.2 "Viewing Distributive Power Diagnostic Screens". For more information on the SA3000 drive, refer to the AutoMax Distributive Power System manual, S-3005.

### The PMI SA3000 Parallel Diagnostic Screen



Figure 6-9 The SA3000 Parallel Diagnostics Screen

The SA3000 Parallel Diagnostics screen, shown in Figure 6-9, displays diagnostic information for an SA3000 high power drive. This diagnostics screen information consists of:

- an expanded drawing of PMI AC Parallel rack and its diagnostic LEDs
- a diagnostic grid showing the states (active or inactive) of drive faults and alarms
- a diagnostic schematic showing states (short or open) for IGBT (AC) output devices

The SA3000 and SB3000 Parallel Diagnostics screen have radio buttons displayed in the IGBT box. These buttons control this outlined portion of the screen and appear next to the section containing the schema of the motoring current from the power module,. The three faults and the IGBT output devices within this section can either summarize all units or pertain to a specific unit. Up to three units can be selected using these radio buttons. To select a unit, click the corresponding radio button.

For more information on this diagnostics screen information, refer to Section 6.1.2 "Viewing Distributive Power Diagnostic Screens". For more information on the SA3000 drive, refer to the AutoMax Distributive Power System manual, S-3005.

The PMI SA500 Diagnostic Screen



Figure 6-10 The SA500 Diagnostics Screen

The SA500 Diagnostics screen, shown in Figure 6-10, displays diagnostic information for an SA500 drive. On the left side of the screen is a pictorial view of the applicable drive faceplate which shows the status of the LED's on the appropriate drive section. The lights show the states of the inverter circuitry, the feedback device, the drive I/O, and the communication link to the UDC module. The right side of the screen displays a diagnostic grid showing status (active or inactive) of drive faults and alarms.

For more information on the SA500 drive, refer to the AutoMax Distributive Power System manual, S-3005.



# The PMI SB3000 Parallel Diagnostic Screen

Figure 6-11 The SB3000 Parallel Diagnostics Screen

The SB3000 Parallel Diagnostics screen, shown in Figure 6-11, displays diagnostic information for an SB3000 high power drive. This diagnostics screen information consists of:

- an expanded drawing of PMI AC Parallel rack and its diagnostic LEDs
- a diagnostic grid showing the states (active or inactive) of drive faults and alarms
- a diagnostic schematic showing states (short or OK) for IGBT (AC) output devices

The SA3000 and SB3000 Parallel Diagnostics screens have radio buttons displayed in the IGBT box. These buttons control the outlined portion of the screen and appear next to the section containing the schema of the motoring current from the power module. The three faults and the IGBT output devices within this section can either summarize all units or pertain to a specific unit. Up to three units can be selected using these radio buttons. To select a unit, click the corresponding radio button.

For more information on this diagnostics screen information, refer to Section 6.1.2 "Viewing Distributed Power Diagnostic Screens".

# The GV3000 Parallel Diagnostic Screen

SIGMA Universal Operator Interface - ITALIMPIANTI - [GV3000 Diagnostics]

! <u>R</u> eturn!					
		No. 1 Pa	yoff Reel		
High D-C Bus	D-C Braking Fault	Function Loss	Network Comm. Loss	Precharge Relay Failure	High Time ID Abort
Low D-C Bus	Self-tuning Failure	Parameter Memory Failure	Drive Not Identified	High Line Voltage	EPROM Write Failure
Overcurrent Steady State	Over- Frequency	Overspeed	Power Unit Overload	Earth Current Failure	Asymetrical Bus Charge
Overcurrent Accelerating	Output Phase Loss	Overtemp	Missing P/U ID Connector	Unselected Power Unit	Input Phase Loss
Overcurrent Decelerating	Serial Port Interrupt	Electronic Thermal O/L	Encoder Loss	Fatal Unexpected Error	
Firs Sec Sec A-C Dri	st Fault: Ov cond Fault: No lf-Tune: Se	vercurrent - stea one. If tuning succes	dy state. ssful.		

Figure 6-12 The GV3000 A-C Drive Diagnostics Screen

The GV3000 A-C Diagnostics screen, shown in Figure 6-12, displays diagnostic information for

an GV3000 A-C drive. This diagnostics screen information consists of:

- a diagnostic grid showing the states (active or inactive) of drive faults and alarms
- text descriptions of the first and second faults that have occurred
- text description of the self-tune result (only in vector mode )

Possible self-tune result messages are:

- Self tuning successful
- User initiated a normal stop.
- Emergency stop or fault stop occurred during self-tuning.
- Motor or pulse tachometer direction in reverse.
- Pulse tachometer PPR out of range.
- Magnetizing current percent out of range.
- Bus voltage error.
- Current limit exceeded.

For more information on this diagnostics screen information, refer to Section 6.1.2 "Viewing Distributed Power Diagnostic Screens".

## The FP 3000 D-C Drive Diagnostic Screen



Figure 6-13 The FP3000 D-C Drive Diagnostics Screen

The FP3000 D-C Diagnostics screen, shown in Figure 6-13, displays diagnostic information for an FP3000 Digital D-C drive. This diagnostics screen information consists of:

- a diagnostic grid showing the states (active or inactive) of status indicators, drive faults and alarms
- text description of the first fault occurring after last fault reset
- text description of the stop cause
- text description of most recent alarm

Stop Cause messages are:

- Stop Asserted or Run negated
- Jog de-asserted for > 1 second
- Internal stop request
- Current limit stop
- Ramp stop

- Coast\DB stop
- Fault stop (or self tuning completed)
- Customer interlock opened
- Coast\DB interlock opened
- Main contact opened

For more information on this diagnostics screen information, refer to Section 6.1.2 "Viewing Distributed Power Diagnostic Screens".



# The PMI SA3100 Diagnostics Screen



The SA3100 Diagnostics screen, shown in Figure 6-14, displays the diagnostic information for

an SA3100 medium power drive. This diagnostic screen information consist of:

- an expanded drawing of PMI AC rack and its diagnostic LEDs
- a diagnostic grid showing the states (active or inactive) of drive faults and alarms
- a PT (Power Technology) Fault # message box
- a diagnostic schematic showing states (short or open) for IGBT (AC) output devices

Possible PT Fault # Messages are:

PT Fault #	Message
1	Voltage read from the A-to-D converter indicates the reference voltage is over 10% out of tolerance (3.3v).
2	Voltage read from the A-to-D converter indicates the reference voltage is over 10% out of tolerance (-3.3v).
3	Torque current loop prop. gain is not within calibration limits $(14 < g < 30)$ .
4	Flux current loop prop. gain is not within calibration limits ( $14 < g < 30$ ).
5	Flux current loop integrator time constant is not within calibrated limits.
6	Torque current loop integrator time constant is not within calibrated limits.
7	Output voltage level went below +-2.2v with no status bit detected indicating unity index of modulation
8	Harmonic injection D-to-A converter has reached its limit prior to unity modulation index.
9	Unity modulation index is in a range beyond its calibration scope.
10	"Harmonic injection D-to-A converter requires a range beyond its calibration scope.
11	The programmable current limit or the ground fault limit is not functioning.
12	The voltage feedback integrator has an improper gain.
13	The frequency of A-to-D interrupts is incorrect (verified with cclk interrupts).
14	PWM generated by 1Khz triangle wave isn't producing proper frequency PWM.
15	DC bus non-zero current feedback at boot time (current > 5% full scale).
16	Phase U non-zero current feedback at boot time (current $> 5\%$ full scale).
17	Phase W non-zero current feedback at boot time (current > 5% full scale).
20	ACTECH power supply fault status bit asserted.
21	Watchdog timeout expires or general ACPTM failure.
22	A-to-D overrun fault.

23	Gate feedback present when phase enable is off.
24	Old backplane.
25	Gate power feedback switch failure.
26	Loss of gate power feedback while in run.
100	Request to close precharge while precharge is already closed.
101	Precharge has not closed after 2 seconds.
102	Precharge is closed and PTM status indicates that its open.
103	Precharge was commanded to open and did not do so after one second.
104	Precharge opened while in run (ALTECH status).
105	GDI status indicates a charge fault.
106	Minimum bus voltage not detected 10 seconds after bus enable
107	AC line signal from gate drive / P.S. module is missing.
108	DC bus voltage ripple exceeds allowable range.
200	SA3100 Isolated +12V PS all frames.
201	SA3100 External Power Supply Fault for G and H frames Only.

For more information on this diagnostic screen information, refer to Section 6.1.2 "Viewing Distributive Power Diagnostic Screens". For more information on the SA3100 drive, refer to the Distributive Power System manual, SA3100 Drive Configuration and Programming S-3056.

# The AB1336 Drive Diagnostics Screen

Power-Up Reset Fault	D-C Bus Over Voltage	Transistor Desaturation	Ground Fault	Instantaneous OverCurrent	Adapter Comm. Loss
Master/Slave Drive to Drive Comm.Timeout	Absolute Overspeed	Analog Power Supply Tolerance	Autocomm. /Transistor Diag. Failure	Inverter Temperature Trip	Software Malfunction
Bus Ridethrough Timeout	Bus Precharge TimeOut	Bus Drop (150 Volts Below Nom.)	Bus Under Voltage	Bus Ridethrough >5 Cycles	Bus Ridethrough >75 Cycles
Feedback Loss	Inverter Over Temperature Pending	Motor Over Temperature Tripped	Motor Overload Pending	Motor Overload Tripped	Motor Stalled
External Fault	RMS Fault	Dynamic Brake Over Temp.	Inverter Overload Pending	Inverter Overload Tripped	

Figure 6-15 The AB1336 Diagnostics Screen

The AB1336 Diagnostics screen, shown in Figure 6-15, displays diagnostic information for an AB1336 drive. This diagnostics screen information consists of a diagnostic grid showing the following status of Power/Diagnostic Fault, Non-Configurable Faults and Current Processor (CP) and Velocity Processor (VP) Configuration Warnings and Faults.

Fault Type and Fault Names	Description	Status	Grid Box Color
<ul><li>Power/Diagnostic</li><li>Absolute Overspeed</li></ul>	Faults consists of problems that could occur with powerup of both the current (CP) and velocity (VP) processors	No Fault Fault	Green Red

Non-Configurable	Cannot disable. These faults are	No Fault	Green
<ul> <li>D-C Bus Overvoltage</li> </ul>	the result of a condition that	Fault	Red
<ul> <li>Transistor Desaturation</li> </ul>	could damage the drive if		
<ul> <li>Ground Fault</li> </ul>	allowed to persist		
<ul> <li>Instantaneous Overcurrent</li> </ul>			
<ul> <li>Adaptor Comm. Loss</li> </ul>			
<ul> <li>Master/Slave Drive to Drive</li> </ul>			
Comm. Timeout			
<ul> <li>Power-Up Reset Fault</li> </ul>			
<ul> <li>Analog Power Supply Tolerance</li> </ul>			
<ul> <li>Autocomm./Transistor Diag.</li> </ul>			
Failure			
<ul> <li>Inverter Temperature Trip</li> </ul>			
<ul> <li>Software Malfunction</li> </ul>			
Current Processor (CP)	Can set up to either trip the drive	No Fault	Green
Configurable	or provide only a visual warning	Warning	Yellow
<ul> <li>Bus Ridethrough Timeout</li> </ul>	while the drive continues to	Fault	Red
<ul> <li>Bus Precharge Timeout</li> </ul>	operate		
<ul> <li>Bus Drop (150 Volts Below</li> </ul>			
Nom.)			
<ul> <li>Bus Under Voltage</li> </ul>			
<ul> <li>Bus Ridethrough &gt;5 Cycles</li> </ul>			
<ul> <li>Bus Ridethrough &gt;75 Cycles</li> </ul>			
Velocity Processor (VP)	Can set up to either trip the drive	No Fault	Green
Configurable	or provide only a visual warning	Warning	Yellow
Feedback Loss	while the drive continues to	Fault	Red
<ul> <li>Inverter Over Temperature</li> </ul>	operate		
Pending			
<ul> <li>Motor Over Temperature</li> </ul>			
Tripped			
<ul> <li>Motor Overload Pending</li> </ul>			
<ul> <li>Motor Overload Tripped</li> </ul>			
<ul> <li>Motor Stalled</li> </ul>			
<ul> <li>External Fault</li> </ul>			
<ul> <li>RMS Fault</li> </ul>			
<ul> <li>Dynamic Brake Over Temp</li> </ul>			
<ul> <li>Inverter Overload Pending</li> </ul>			
<ul> <li>Inverter Overload Tripped</li> </ul>			

For more information on this diagnostics screen information, refer to section A.9 Troubleshooting With The AB1336 Drive Diagnostic Screen.



# Changing the Setpoint Value for a Section

Figure 6-16 A Section Control Window with a Slider Bar Under Development

Clicking a push-button in the **Section** column of the Drive Overview screen (refer to Section 6.1) displays a "Section Control" window. An example is shown in Figure 6-16. This window allows a user to assign the section a setpoint value, and/or use a push-button to control a drive. The push-button names and functions are application specific. For example, a paper line may use the names Run, Crawl, Jog Fwd, Jog Rev, and Stop for the functions needed.

A setpoint value is used to adjust the drive to either a desired speed, load, tension, draw, etc. This value corresponds to the "Setpoint" column of the Drive Overview screen. The setpoint value can be set by any of the following devices:

- keyboard entry of a setpoint value (this is always provided in a "Section Control" window
- slider bar (optional feature) see Figure 6-16
- increase/decrease push-buttons (optional feature) see Figure 6-17

#### **Screen Description**

The following fields and push-button are at the top of the "Section Control" window:

#### Actual

Displays the current reference value of the setpoint. This field is display-only.

#### Set push-button/field

Clicking this push-button activates a field for the keyboard entry of the setpoint value. When the field is activated, enter a setpoint value, and press <Enter>.

When a change is made to the setpoint value, the new setpoint value is displayed here. The **Actual** field displays the current reference of the setpoint.

Located next to the **Actual** and **Set** fields are two display-only indicators. The top indicator displays the status of the section. The bottom indicator displays the name of the setpoint (e.g., "Load, "Tension"). The "Section Control" window may also display the name of the group the section belongs to, directly below the setpoint name.

The "Section Control" window may contain one of the following optional features for changing the setpoint value:

#### Slider Bar (optional feature)

Using a slider bar makes large changes to a setpoint value. The slide bar is typically used only for setting the speed of the "lead" drive section in a process line. It controls both negative as well as positive values (depending on the slider bar's configured ranges and setpoint data format) See Sections 6.3.5 and 6.4.2 in the Developers Manual.

Clicking the slider bar button and holding down the left mouse button modifies the setpoint value using the slider. Move the mouse to slide the button up or down. The upward action increases the setpoint value. Conversely, the downward action decreases the setpoint value.

Using the up and down arrow push-buttons located below the slider bar makes small finetune changes to a setpoint value. Clicking the up arrow push-button increases the setpoint value. Clicking the down arrow push-button decreases the setpoint value.

A change to the setpoint value using the slide bar requires confirmation. The OK pushbutton turns orange when confirmation of a setpoint value is needed. To confirm a setpoint value, click the orange OK push-button. Changes made using the up and down arrow buttons, however, do not require confirmation.

#### Increase/Decrease push-buttons (optional feature)

#### Note

These push-buttons are not the same as the up and down arrow pushbuttons located below the slider bar.

Clicking an Increase or Decrease push-button makes small changes (one unit at a time) to the setpoint. Increase/Decrease push-buttons are the preferred method to control machine parameters. Clicking the Increase push-button increases the value. Clicking the Decrease push-button decreases the value.

When either push-button is held down, the corresponding control variable ramps until the button is released. Changes made with these push-buttons do not require confirmation.

The "Section Control" window may display up to five "action" push-buttons in the lower right corner of the window. These push-buttons are used to control the drive section and are application-specific. They can have names such as "Run," "Jog," "Stop," etc. The color of the button changes depending on the status of the drive. For example, if the user clicks the "Run" push-button, it lights up when the drive is actually running.

In the lower right section of the window, the following push-button appears:

#### Return

Clicking this push-button to return to the Drive Overview Screen. Ensure that any setpoint value changes have been confirmed before returning to the Drive Overview Screen or the changes do not take effect.

# The Section Screen



Figure 6-17 The Section Screen

Clicking the **Section!** option from the **Main Menu** displays the **Section Screen**. An example is shown in Figure 6-17. The Section Screen contains a horizontal scrollable list of section control boxes. Three boxes are visible on the screen at a time. Both the Section Screen and a single "Section Control" window in the Drive Overview Screen (refer to section 6.1) are the same for a given section.

The Section Screen is divided into two parts:

- Header Section This section is divided into two rows. The first row contains the Rockwell Automation logo and/or the name of the applicable machine, the company's name, and the date and time. The second row contains a data display bar. This bar can be configured to display up to 3 variables which an operator wants to monitor regularly. For example, section speeds can be displayed. The variables displaying here, are the same variables shown in the Drive Overview Screen. All of this information is display-only.
- Section Control Panel This panel contains all of the sections listed in the Drive Overview Screen which permit access to the "Section Control" window. At the top of the panel is a horizontal scroll bar, which is used to scroll through the Section Control Panel. To scroll one section panel at a time, click the arrow push-buttons at either end of the scroll bar. To move three sections at a time, click once directly on the scroll bar roll, between an arrow button and the scroll bar button.

Each section control box works like a "Section Control" window from the Drive Overview Screen. See Section 6.1.3, "Changing the Setpoint Value for a Section" for information on the using section control boxes.



# The SPAD (Speed and Draw) Screen

Figure 6-18 The SPAD (Speed and Draw) Screen

Clicking the **SPAD!** option from the Main Menu displays the SPAD (Speed and Draw) Screen, as shown in Figure 6-18. The SPAD screen is an optional screen of the Drive Overview system. This screen typically is used for a paper machine or a similar process where section draw is an important parameter. The Overview Screen Configuration Utility is used to configure this screen and the variable used during draw calculation. Refer to Chapter 6, Configuring the Drive Overview Screen and Support Screens in the SIGMA Developers Manual, for more information. The Draw Screen is divided into three parts:

- **Header** section This top section of the Draw Screen is divided into two rows. The first row contains the Rockwell Automation logo and/or the name of the applicable machine, the company name, and the date and time. The second row displays a data display bar. This bar can be configured to display up to 3 variables which an operator wants to monitor regularly. All of this information is display-only.
- A and **B Factors** section This section displays the A and B factors, and the equation and total for the draw. This information is display-only. Sections from the list below are selected as the A or B factor. When selected, the section's variable value for the section is displayed in the field. The same variable is used for all sections in this screen.
- **Drive** push-button section This section contains a scrollable list of sections from the Drive Overview Screen (refer to Figure 6-1). Twenty-four (24) sections can be shown on the screen at a time.

Five push-buttons appear along the bottom of the screen and serve as the draw screen action

buttons. They are:

- Select A Clicking this push-button selects the section to be used as the A factor in calculating the draw.
- Select B Clicking this push-button selects the section to be used as the B factor in calculating the draw.
- (B A) / B \* 100, B / A \* 100, and B A Clicking one of these push-buttons calculates the draw according to the displayed equation. They have no effect if either the A factor or the B factor has not been selected.

### **Selecting Sections for Calculation**

- 1. The following lists the steps for selecting a section as either the A or B factor.
- 2. Click either Select A or Select B.
- 3. Click the desired section.

4. The current variable value for the section is displayed in the appropriate **A**: or **B**: field at the top of the screen. The name of the section appears above the value and the units (e.g., FPM) appear to the right. Repeat steps 1 and 2 to select another section.

### **Calculating Draws**

The following lists the steps for calculating draw values:

- 1. Verify that the A and B factors displayed at the top of the screen are correct. If not, perform the steps in section 6.3.1 (Selecting Sections for Calculation) before continuing to the next step.
- 2. Click the desired calculation push-button. The draw value is calculated and displayed in the draw result field in the middle of the screen.
- 3. If necessary, clicking another calculation push-button displays the new draw result in the field.

# Summary

This chapter highlighted the process of monitoring drives by using the Drive Overview Screen and its support screens. Again, note that the Drive Overview System is configured on an application-specific basis. Therefore, some features presented in this chapter may not be available on your system. If features described in this chapter are desired but not provided on your system, discuss adding them with your Rockwell Automation sales engineer.

6.1 The Drive Overview Screen	
6.1.1 Viewing Bar Charts	115
6.1.2 Viewing Distributive Power Diagnostic Screens	116
6.1.2.1 The Help Option	118
6.1.2.2 The PMI SD3000 Diagnostic Screen	
6.1.2.3 The PMI SD3000 Regen Diagnostic Screen	122
6.1.2.4 The PMI SA3000 Diagnostic Screen	
6.1.2.5 The PMI SA3000 Parallel Diagnostic Screen	
6.1.2.6 The PMI SA500 Diagnostic Screen	125
6.1.2.7 The PMI SB3000 Parallel Diagnostic Screen	
6.1.2.8 The GV3000 Parallel Diagnostic Screen	127
6.1.2.9 The FP 3000 D-C Drive Diagnostic Screen	129
6.1.2.10 The PMI SA3100 Diagnostics Screen	131
6.1.2.11 The AB1336 Drive Diagnostics Screen	
6.1.3 Changing the Setpoint Value for a Section	
6.2 The Section Screen	
6.3 The SPAD (Speed and Draw) Screen	141
6.3.1 Selecting Sections for Calculation	
6.3.2 Calculating Draws	
6.4 Summary	143
<b>E</b> ierre (1/The Drive Orecentions Concern	110
Figure 6-1 The Drive Overview Screen	
Figure 6-1 The Drive Overview Screen Figure 6-2 A Bar Chart Window	112
Figure 6-1 The Drive Overview Screen         Figure 6-2 A Bar Chart Window.         Figure 6-3 The Help Menu.	112 115 118
Figure 6-1 The Drive Overview Screen         Figure 6-2 A Bar Chart Window.         Figure 6-3 The Help Menu.         Figure 6-4 The Help Text.	112 115 118 119
Figure 6-1 The Drive Overview Screen         Figure 6-2 A Bar Chart Window.         Figure 6-3 The Help Menu.         Figure 6-4 The Help Text.         Figure 6-5 The Note Window	112 115 118 119 120
Figure 6-1 The Drive Overview Screen         Figure 6-2 A Bar Chart Window.         Figure 6-3 The Help Menu.         Figure 6-4 The Help Text.         Figure 6-5 The Note Window         Figure 6-6 The PMI SD3000 Diagnostics Screen	112 115 118 119 120 121
Figure 6-1 The Drive Overview Screen         Figure 6-2 A Bar Chart Window.         Figure 6-3 The Help Menu.         Figure 6-4 The Help Text.         Figure 6-5 The Note Window         Figure 6-6 The PMI SD3000 Diagnostics Screen         Figure 6-7 The SD3000 Regen Diagnostics Screen	112 115 118 120 120 121 122
Figure 6-1 The Drive Overview ScreenFigure 6-2 A Bar Chart Window.Figure 6-3 The Help Menu.Figure 6-4 The Help Text.Figure 6-5 The Note WindowFigure 6-6 The PMI SD3000 Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-7 The SD3000 Regen Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-8 The SA3000 Diagnostics Screen	112 115 118 119 120 121 121 122 123
<ul> <li>Figure 6-1 The Drive Overview Screen</li> <li>Figure 6-2 A Bar Chart Window.</li> <li>Figure 6-3 The Help Menu.</li> <li>Figure 6-4 The Help Text.</li> <li>Figure 6-5 The Note Window</li> <li>Figure 6-6 The PMI SD3000 Diagnostics Screen</li> <li>Figure 6-7 The SD3000 Regen Diagnostics Screen.</li> <li>Figure 6-8 The SA3000 Diagnostics Screen</li> <li>Figure 6-9 The SA3000 Parallel Diagnostics Screen</li> </ul>	112 115 118 119 120 121 122 123 124
<ul> <li>Figure 6-1 The Drive Overview Screen</li></ul>	112 115 118 119 120 121 122 123 124 125
Figure 6-1 The Drive Overview ScreenFigure 6-2 A Bar Chart WindowFigure 6-3 The Help MenuFigure 6-4 The Help TextFigure 6-5 The Note WindowFigure 6-6 The PMI SD3000 Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-7 The SD3000 Regen Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-8 The SA3000 Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-9 The SA3000 Parallel Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-10 The SA500 Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-11 The SB3000 Parallel Diagnostics Screen	112 115 118 119 120 121 122 123 124 125 126
Figure 6-1 The Drive Overview ScreenFigure 6-2 A Bar Chart Window.Figure 6-3 The Help Menu.Figure 6-4 The Help Text.Figure 6-5 The Note WindowFigure 6-6 The PMI SD3000 Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-7 The SD3000 Regen Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-8 The SA3000 Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-9 The SA3000 Parallel Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-10 The SA500 Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-11 The SB3000 Parallel Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-12 The GV3000 A-C Drive Diagnostics Screen	112 115 118 119 120 121 122 123 124 125 126 127
Figure 6-1 The Drive Overview ScreenFigure 6-2 A Bar Chart WindowFigure 6-3 The Help MenuFigure 6-3 The Help TextFigure 6-5 The Note WindowFigure 6-5 The Note WindowFigure 6-6 The PMI SD3000 Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-7 The SD3000 Regen Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-8 The SA3000 Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-9 The SA3000 Parallel Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-10 The SA500 Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-11 The SB3000 Parallel Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-12 The GV3000 A-C Drive Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-13 The FP3000 D-C Drive Diagnostics Screen	112 115 118 120 120 121 122 123 124 125 126 127 129
Figure 6-1 The Drive Overview ScreenFigure 6-2 A Bar Chart Window.Figure 6-3 The Help Menu.Figure 6-3 The Help Menu.Figure 6-4 The Help Text.Figure 6-5 The Note WindowFigure 6-5 The Note Window ObjectorFigure 6-6 The PMI SD3000 Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-7 The SD3000 Regen Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-8 The SA3000 Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-9 The SA3000 Parallel Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-10 The SA500 Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-11 The SB3000 Parallel Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-12 The GV3000 A-C Drive Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-13 The FP3000 D-C Drive Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-14 SA3100 Diagnostics Screen	112 115 118 119 120 121 122 123 124 125 126 127 129 131
Figure 6-1 The Drive Overview ScreenFigure 6-2 A Bar Chart WindowFigure 6-3 The Help MenuFigure 6-3 The Help TextFigure 6-5 The Note WindowFigure 6-5 The Note WindowFigure 6-6 The PMI SD3000 Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-7 The SD3000 Regen Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-8 The SA3000 Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-9 The SA3000 Parallel Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-10 The SA500 Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-11 The SB3000 Parallel Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-12 The GV3000 A-C Drive Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-13 The FP3000 D-C Drive Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-14 SA3100 Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-15 The AB1336 Diagnostics Screen	112 115 118 120 120 121 122 123 124 125 126 127 129 131 134
Figure 6-1 The Drive Overview ScreenFigure 6-2 A Bar Chart Window.Figure 6-3 The Help Menu.Figure 6-4 The Help Text.Figure 6-5 The Note WindowFigure 6-6 The PMI SD3000 Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-7 The SD3000 Regen Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-8 The SA3000 Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-9 The SA3000 Parallel Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-10 The SA500 Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-11 The SB3000 Parallel Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-12 The GV3000 A-C Drive Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-13 The FP3000 D-C Drive Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-14 SA3100 Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-15 The AB1336 Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-16 A Section Control Window with a Slider Bar	112 115 118 119 120 121 122 123 124 125 126 127 129 131 134 136
Figure 6-1 The Drive Overview ScreenFigure 6-2 A Bar Chart Window.Figure 6-3 The Help Menu.Figure 6-4 The Help Text.Figure 6-5 The Note Window .Figure 6-6 The PMI SD3000 Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-7 The SD3000 Regen Diagnostics Screen.Figure 6-8 The SA3000 Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-9 The SA3000 Parallel Diagnostics Screen.Figure 6-10 The SA500 Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-11 The SB3000 Parallel Diagnostics Screen.Figure 6-12 The GV3000 A-C Drive Diagnostics Screen.Figure 6-13 The FP3000 D-C Drive Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-14 SA3100 Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-15 The AB1336 Diagnostics ScreenFigure 6-16 A Section Control Window with a Slider BarFigure 6-17 The Section Screen	$\begin{array}{c} 112 \\ 115 \\ 118 \\ 119 \\ 120 \\ 121 \\ 122 \\ 123 \\ 124 \\ 125 \\ 126 \\ 127 \\ 129 \\ 131 \\ 134 \\ 136 \\ 139 \end{array}$
## Chapter 7

## Using The SIGMA NE Recipe System

### **Chapter Overview**

The SIGMA NE Recipe System is designed to ease setup and operation of a process line. A recipe is a set of setpoints or references for various production parameters such as: line speed, section draw, section tension, section position, temperatures, etc. These values are referred to as "Recipe Elements".

The SIGMA NE Recipe System lets the user prepare and download recipes to the control system and then monitor any change in the setpoint values that might occur. These reference setpoints can be changed by the SIGMA NE user, the process line operator or by the controller. The SIGMA NE Recipe System also lets the user "capture" changed setpoints as a recipe to be used at a later time.

The SIGMA NE Recipe System is made up of two main screens:

- the "Recipe Editor" Screen
- the "Recipe Manager" Screen

These screen titles, and the following column titles and push-button captions used in this chapter are developer-specified. The functions of these screens, columns and push-buttons are defined below:

Screen\Column\Push-button	Function
"Recipe Editor" Screen (see Figure 7-1)	Lets the user:
	• create, modify, store, delete and
	print recipes.
	• retrieve stored recipes
	• save recipes to disk
	<ul> <li>load recipes from disk</li> </ul>
"Recipe Manager" Screen (see Figure 7-13)	Lets the user to:
	• prepare and download recipes to
	the drive system
	<ul> <li>modify setpoints that are currently</li> </ul>
	running on the drive system
	• capture these changed setpoints as a recipe to be used at a later time.
"Setpoint" Column (see Figure 7-13)	values in this column are currently being applied by the drive system.
"Preset" Column (see Figure 7-13)	Reference Values that were sent down to
	the drive system from the SIGMA Recipe
	Manager (If no changes have been made,
	this value will match the setpoint.)
"Next" Column (see Figure 7-13)	References Values in this column are in
	queue to be applied for the next product.
	Note that this column is stored only in the
	drive system until a download is initiated
"Capture" Dush button (see Figure 7.13)	Allows the values in the Setpoint column
Capture Fusit-Dutton (see Figure 7-15)	to be stored as a recipe
"Download" Duch button (200 Ecours 7.12)	Downloads the rooms in the Next solution
Download Push-button (see Figure 7-15)	to the drive system.
"Load Next" Push-buttons (see Figure 7-1	Lets the user prepare the next recipe to be
and Figure 7-13)	run.

This chapter describes:

- Editing Recipes -using the Recipe Editor screen
- Managing Recipes-using the Recipe Manager screen

### **Editing Recipes**

The Recipe Editor screen is used to prepare and modify recipes that can be downloaded to the control system using the Recipe Manager screen. This screen lets the user:

- browse a recipe's elements
- browse stored recipes
- edit an existing recipe or enter a new recipe
- copy, clear, save, delete, print, file (import or export), and "load next" recipes in the Edit Field or that have been stored.

					D		
	-	SIGMA Reci	pe S	System - [Recip	e Editor]		<b>▼</b> \$
	E <u>x</u> it! <u>M</u> anager! <u>E</u> ditor!		_				
		F	lec	ipe Editor			
	Edit Functions :						
	Default ! Copy C	lear! Sa	ive	Delete	Print	File L	oad Next
_				Edit Field	+		•
	Recipe Name			1	magazine	News Print	paper
	BEL BAIE SPEED	FPM	•	2000	1000	900	1100
	PRESS DRAW	FPM		20	9	20	6
	1st Dryer	FPM	]	15	7	18	7
	3RD Dryer Draw	FPM	]	12	8	20	8
A —	Size Press Top Draw	FPM	]	10	11	12	9
	4th Dryer Draw	FPM	]	18	12	17	22
	4TH Dryer Wet Draw	FPM	]	16	10	11	11
	Calender Drum Draw	FPM	]	20	8	20	8
	Reel Drum Draw	FPM	]	28	20	30	91
	Reel Speed	FPM	ł	2123	1075	1037	1251
				ç		i B	

Figure 7-1 Recipe Editor Screen

### **Browsing Recipe Elements**

Up to ten recipe elements and their units (see call-out A in Figure 7-1) can be displayed at one time. Use the vertical scroll bar to browse through the recipes that have more than ten recipe elements.

### **Browsing Stored Recipes**

Up to three stored recipes (see call-out B in Figure 7-1) can be displayed at one time. Use the horizontal scroll bar to browse when there are more than three stored recipes

### Editing an Existing Recipe or Entering a New Recipe

The Edit Field column (see call-out C in Figure 7-1) is used to edit an existing or enter a new recipe. Any cell can be highlighted by selecting it with the mouse and clicking. When the "Recipe Name" cell is highlighted, the popup keyboard is displayed for data entry.(see Figure 7-2).

When a Recipe Element cell (e.g. "Press Draw") is highlighted, the pop-up keypad is displayed for data entry (see Figure 7-3).

Save Recipe As Name
` 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 - = BackSp         Tab> q w e r t y u i o p [ ] \         Caps a s d f g h j k l ; ' Enter         Shift z x c v b n m , . / Shift
Clea <u>r</u> <u>C</u> ancel <u>O</u> k
Figure 7-2 Pop-Up Keyboard

		PRI	ESS DR/	W
5				
	7	8	9	BackSp
	4	5	6	
	1	2	3	
	-	0	•	
	Clea <u>r</u>		ancel	<u>O</u> k

If the data entered through the keypad is invalid, then a pop-up Edit Data message box (see Figure 7-4) displays the valid range for the recipe element being modified.

Figure 7-3 Pop-Up Keypad

Edit Data		
753 is an invalid entry. Valid range is -200 to 200		
ОК		

Figure 7-4 Pop-Up Edit Data Message Box

### **Editing Recipe Files**

At the top of the Recipe Editor screen, there are seven **Edit Function** buttons and a **"Load Next"** button (see Figure 7-5). The following table lists each button, its description and procedure.

Edit Functions :			
Default ! Copy Clear ! Save	Delete Print	File	Load Next

Figure 7-5 Edit Function and "Load Next" Buttons

Push-button	Description
Default !	Loads default recipe element values (defined by the recipe during the design of the SIGMA NE Recipe System) into the <b>Edit Field</b> column
	To load default recipe values:
	1. Click the <b>Default!</b> push-button.
	The default recipe values are loaded into the <b>Edit Field</b> column.

Сору	Copies a selected recipe into the <b>Edit Field</b> column for modification or as a starting point for new recipes.		
	To copy a recipe:		
	1. Click <b>Copy</b> Push-button		
	The <b>Copy Recipe</b> box (see Figure 7-6) is displayed.		
	Copy Recipe   Paper Grade   OK   Cancel   Figure 7-6 Copy Recipe Box		
	2. Click the $[\downarrow]$ Push-button.		
	3. When the recipe menu opens, click the recipe to be copied.		
	4. Click the <b>OK</b> button		
	The recipe is displayed in the <b>Edit Field</b> column.		
	<b>Note:</b> A recipe may also be copied by "double-clicking" on the recipe name of a visible recipe column (see call-out B in Figure 7-1).		
Clear !	Clears the <b>Edit Field</b> column		
	To clear the <b>Edit Field</b> :		
	1. Click the <b>Clear!</b> Push-button		
	The current values in the Edit Field are cleared.		

	1		
Save	Saves the values in the <b>Edit Field</b> column to the Recipe File using the name specified in the Recipe Name cell.		
	To save values in the Edit Field column as an existing recipe name:		
	<ol> <li>Click the Save Push-button If the name specified in the "Recipe Name" cell already exists in the Recipe File, then the Save Recipe pop-up box (see Figure 7-7) appears asking whether to overwrite the existing recipe in the Recipe File.</li> <li>Save Recipe Overwrite pulp in Recipe File? OK Cancel</li> <li>Figure 7-7 Save Recipe (Overwrite) Box</li> </ol>		
	2. Click <b>OK</b> and the values in the <b>Edit Field</b> are saved as the existing recipe.		
	To save values in the Edit Field column as a new recipe name:		
	1. Click the <b>Save</b> Push-button		
	Save Recipe         Add steelbar to Recipe File ?         OK       Cancel         Figure 7-8       Save Recipe (Add) Box		
	If the name specified in the "Recipe Name" cell does not exists in the Recipe File, then the <b>Save Recipe</b> pop-up box (see Figure 7-8) appears asking whether to add the new recipe to the recipe file		
	2. Click <b>OK</b> The values in the <b>Edit Field</b> are saved as the new recipe		

	1	
Delete	Deletes a stored recipe from the Recipe File.	
	<ul><li>To delete a stored recipe:</li><li>1. Click <b>Delete</b> Push-button</li></ul>	
	The <b>Delete Recipe</b> box (see Figure 7-9) is displayed.	
	Delete Recipe     Pulp     OK   Cancel   Figure 7-9   Delete Recipe Box	
	2. Click the $[\underline{\downarrow}]$ Push-button.	
	3. When the recipe menu opens, click the stored recipe to be deleted.	
	4. Click the <b>OK</b> button.	
	The specified stored recipe is deleted	
Print	Prints some or all of the stored recipes.	
	Print Recipes         Print Recipe Group         Starting With:         Paper         Ending With:         Pulp         Print Recipe Count         3         Select All Recipes         OK         Cancel         Figure 7-10 Print Recipes Pop-Up Window	
	To print all stored recipes:	
	1. Click the <b>Print</b> Push-button. The <b>Print Recipes</b> pop-up window (see Figure 7-10) is displayed.	
	2. To print all stored recipes, click the <b>Select All Recipes</b> push-	

	button. The <b>Print Recipe Count</b> displays the number of recipes to be printed.
3.	Click the <b>OK</b> button to print all the stored recipes.
To prin	nt one or more recipes:
1.	Click the <b>Print</b> Push-button. The <b>Print Recipes</b> pop-up window (see Figure 7-10) is displayed.
2.	To print one or more stored recipes, click the <b>Starting With</b> $[\downarrow]$ push-button.
3.	When the <b>Starting With</b> recipe menu opens, click the first to print. Recipes are stored in alphabetical order.
4.	Click the <b>Ending With</b> $[\downarrow]$ push-button.
5.	When the <b>Ending With</b> recipe menu opens, click the last recipe to print. The <b>Print Recipe Count</b> displays the number of recipes to be printed.
6.	Click the <b>OK</b> button to print the selected stored recipes.

File	Saves or loads the Recipe File to or from a floppy disk				
	Expo Figure	Export / Import Files scipe File Used: Sigmavb\RcpPaper.mdb t Import Exit e 7-11 Export/Import Files			
	Note: the Ref from d	<b>Note:</b> Export/Import Files is an "all-or-none" feature. All recipes in the Recipe File will be exported or imported. If recipes are imported from disk, they will overwrite all of the recipes in the SIGMA. To import or export the Recipe File:			
	To imp				
	1.	Click <b>File</b> Push-button			
		The <b>Export/Import Files</b> pop-up window (see Figure 7-11) displays the Recipe File's path and name in the <b>Current Recipe File Used</b> field.			
	2a	To copy the displayed Recipe File to floppy disk, click the <b>Export</b> push-button.			
		Note that the size of the Recipe File cannot exceed the capacity of the floppy disk (e.g. the file cannot be larger than 1.44Mb when being copied to a 3.5" high density disk).			
	2b	To copy the Recipe File from a floppy disk to the displayed Recipe File location, click the <b>Import</b> push-button.			
	3	To exit the <b>Export/Import Files</b> pop-up window, click the <b>Exit</b> push-button.			

Load Next	Prepar Screen screen	es the next recipe to be downloaded from the <b>Recipe Manager</b> (similar to the <b>Load Next</b> push-button in the <b>Recipe Manager</b> ).Refer to 7.3.1 d Next Grade * <b>Cancel</b> * <b>7-12</b> "Load Next" Pop-Up Window	
	To prepare the next recipe to be downloaded:		
	1.	Click the "Load Next" Push-button	
		The <b>"Load Next"</b> pop-up window (see Figure 7-12) is displayed.	
	2.	Click the $[\underline{\downarrow}]$ Push-button.	
	3.	When the Recipe menu opens, click the recipe to be prepared for downloading from the <b>Recipe Manager</b> screen.	
	4.	Click the <b>OK</b> button	
		The selected recipe is displayed in the "Next" column of the Recipe Manager screen.	



## Managing Recipes

#### Figure 7-13 Recipe Manager

The recipe manager screen (see Figure 7-13) is the on-line component of the SIGMA NE Recipe System. From this screen, the user can:

- display recipe elements and their units
- display, modify and capture the actual setpoints presently running in the drive system
- display the recipe as it was sent to the drive system
- download the next recipe to the drive system
- load and review the next recipe to be downloaded to the drive system

The **"Controlled Variable"** column (see call-out A in Figure 7-13) is a list of the recipe elements and units for the recipe item in each row. Note that "controlled variables" is an application-specific title for the recipe elements. Up to ten recipe elements can be viewed at a time. Other elements can be viewed by using the scroll bar to move up and down the element list. As the scroll bar scrolls the "Controlled Variable" column, all other columns scroll synchronously.

The "**Setpoint**" column (see call-out B in Figure 7-13) contains the current value of each recipe element. If no modifications have been made since the recipe was downloaded to the drive system, the "**Setpoint**" column is identical to the fourth column labeled "**Preset**" (see call-out C in Figure 7-13). If, however, any of the references are changed by the user or by the drive system, the affected elements in the "**Setpoint**" column are highlighted in Cyan (light blue).

### Preparing The Next Recipe To Run

The "Load Next" push-button (see call-out E in Figure 7-13) lets the user prepare the next recipe to be run. To prepare the next recipe to run:

- Click the "Load Next" push-button.A "Load Next" pop-up window (see Figure 7-14) appears.
- 2. Click the  $[\downarrow]$  button to view the available stored recipes and then click the recipe to be loaded next.
- 3. Click the **OK** button and the selected recipe is displayed in the "**Next**" column (see call-out D in Figure 7-13).

### Modifying "Next" Recipe Values Before Downloading

The user can modify each element value in the "**Next**" column during line operation. Each value is displayed in a cell. To modify an element value:

1. Click the value's cell in the "**Next**" column. The value is then highlighted and the pop-up keypad (see Figure 7-15) is displayed.

> The keypad allows the user to enter values by either pointing device (mouse or trackball) or using a hardware keyboard



Figure 7-15 Pop-Up Keypad

2. Modify the "Next" value using this keypad

If the **Clear** push-button is clicked, all keypad entries are cleared from the display. If the **Cancel** push-button on this pop-up keypad is clicked, no action is taken.

3. After modifying the "Next" value, click the **OK** push-button.

If the new value is within limits set by the drive system software, it is displayed in the "Next" column. Also the user is notified that the "Next" Recipe has been changed when (modified) is displayed under the Recipe's Name in the "Next" column.



Figure 7-14 "Load Next" Pop-Up Window

If the value is not within limits, a pop-up box (see Figure 7-4) displays the valid range for the

recipe element.

4. Re-enter an acceptable value and again click on the **OK** push-button.

#### **Downloading Recipes**

The **Download** push-button (see call-out F in Figure 7-13) downloads the recipe in the **Next** column to the drive system.

1. Click the **Download** push-button.

The **Download** pop-up window appears (see Figure 7-16) which asks whether the recipe displayed in the "**Next**" column is to be downloaded and become the "Preset" recipe.

 Click the **OK** button on the **Download** pop-up window to download the "Next" recipe into the drive system.



Figure 7-16 Download Pop-Up Window

The column, titled **"Preset"** (see call-out C in Figure 7-13), contains the recipe name and setpoint (reference) values of the recipe elements which were last downloaded to the drive system. Also if the **"Next"** column had been modified before downloading, a **(modified)** is displayed in the **Recipe Name** box.

The column, titled "**Setpoint**" (see call-out B in Figure 7-13) also contains these setpoint values until they are changed either by the user or by the drive system. The Recipe Name box displays **(unsaved)** until this recipe is captured.

### **Modifying Setpoint Values**

The user can modify each element value in the **"Setpoint** " column during line operation. Each value is displayed on a push-button. To modify an element value:

 Click the value's cell push-button in the "Setpoint" column. The cell is then highlighted and the pop-up keypad (see Figure 7-17) is displayed.

The keypad allows the user to enter values by either pointing device (mouse or trackball) or using a hardware keyboard.



Figure 7-17 Pop-Up Keypad

2. Modify the setpoint value using this keypad

If the **Clear** push-button is clicked, all keypad entries are cleared from the display. If the **Cancel** push-button on this pop-up keypad is clicked, no action is taken.

3. After modifying the setpoint value, click the OK push-button

If the new value is within limits set by the drive system software, then it is downloaded to the drive system. When the new value has been accepted by the drive system, it is displayed in the "**Setpoint**" column.

If the value is not accepted, a pop-up box (see Figure 7-4) displays the valid range for the recipe element.

### **Capturing Setpoint Values As a Recipe**

The "Capture" push-button (see call-out G in Figure 7-13) allows the values in the "Setpoint" column to be stored as a recipe. To capture setpoint values:

1. Click the "Capture" push-button.

The Capture Recipe pop-up window (see Figure 7-18) appears allowing the user to enter a new recipe name or overwrite a currently stored recipe name listed in the pull-down list.

Capture Recipe

Save Recine As:

To enter a new recipe name:

2a. Click anywhere in the Capture **Recipe** box and the pop-up keyboard (see Figure 7-19) allows the user to enter the recipe name by either pointing device (mouse or trackball) or using a hardware keyboard.

If the **Cancel** push-button is clicked, no action is taken. If the Clear pushbutton is clicked, any text on the screen keyboard display is cleared.

ipe Window Cap g Ρ

Save Recipe As Name	
` 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 - = BackSp         Tab> q       w e r t y u i o p [ ] 1         Caps a s d f g h j k l ; ' Enter         Shift       z x c v b n m , . / Shift	
Clea <u>r</u> <u>C</u> ancel <u>O</u> k	



3a. After the new recipe name has been entered in the text box, click the **OK** push-button.

The Add Recipe Confirmation pop-up box (see Figure 7-1, Figure 7-20) asks to confirm the selection.

- 4a. Click the **OK** push-button to add the new recipe to the file. The element values in the "**Setpoint**" column are stored as a recipe under the new recipe name.
- To overwrite an existing recipe:
- 2b. Click the [↓] push-button to view currently stored recipes and then click the recipe name to be overwritten.
- **3b.** Click the **OK** push-button and the Overwrite Recipe Confirmation Popup Box (see Figure 7-21) asks to confirm the selection.



Figure 7-20 Add	Recipe Cor	nfirmation	Pop-Up
Box			

Capture Recipe				
Overwrite recipe in file?				
News Print				
OK Cancel				

**Figure 7-21** Overwrite Recipe Confirmation Pop-Up Box

4b. Click **OK** push-button to overwrite the existing recipe in the file.

7.1	Chapter Overview	
7.2	Editing Recipes	
7.2.1	Browsing Recipe Elements	
7.2.2	2 Browsing Stored Recipes	
7.2.3	Editing an Existing Recipe or Entering a New Recipe	
7.2.4	Editing Recipe Files	149
7.3	Managing Recipes	
7.3.1	Preparing The Next Recipe To Run	
7.3.2	2 Modifying "Next" Recipe Values Before Downloading	
7.3.3	B Downloading Recipes	
7.3.4	Modifying Setpoint Values	
7.3.5	5 Capturing Setpoint Values As a Recipe	
Figure 7-	1 Recipe Editor Screen	147
Figure 7-	<b>2</b> Pop-Up Keyboard	
Figure 7-	<b>3</b> Pop-Up Keypad	
Figure 7-	4 Pop-Up Edit Data Message Box	
Figure 7-	5 Edit Function and "Load Next" Buttons	
Figure 7-	<b>6</b> Copy Recipe Box	
Figure 7-	7 Save Recipe (Overwrite) Box	
Figure 7-	8 Save Recipe (Add) Box	
Figure 7-	9 Delete Recipe Box	
Figure 7-	10 Print Recipes Pop-Up Window	
Figure 7-	11 Export/Import Files	
Figure 7-	12 "Load Next" Pop-Up Window	
Figure 7-	13 Recipe Manager	
Figure 7-	14 "Load Next" Pop-Up Window	
Figure 7-	<b>15</b> Pop-Up Keypad	
Figure 7-	16 Download Pop-Up Window	
Figure 7-	17 Pop-Up Keypad	
Figure 7-	18 Pop-Up Capture Recipe Window	
Figure 7-	<b>19</b> Pop-Up Keyboard	
Figure 7-	20 Add Recipe Confirmation Pop-Up Box	
Figure 7-	21 Overwrite Recipe Confirmation Pop-Up Box	

## Chapter 8

## SIGMA NE Support

For SIGMA NE technical assistance, see the Local Drive Solution Contact Directory at the end of this chapter for the location and contact numbers of the nearest Rockwell Drive Solution Center.

## **Recommended Spares**

Because of the importance of the SIGMA Server communication with the ControlNet Network, it is recommended that a spare ControlNet interface card (optionally a PC Link card for DCSNET) be purchased with a SIGMA NE system.

#### Local Drive Solution Contact Directory



New England Ph: 508.357.8431 Fax 508.485.5059 Boston MA Southeast Ph. 770.277.0277 Fax 770.682.6491 Atlanta GA Gulf Coast Ph. 281.233.0300 Fax 281.233.0101 Houston TX West Coast Ph. 626.969.7647 Fax 626.334.8320 Los Angeles CA

Eastern	Carolinas	Midwes	t St.	Louis MO
Ph: 732.225.	1360 Ph.	704.525.1455	Ph. 630.860.1090	Ph: 314.770.0168
Fax 732.225.	7833 Fax	704.525.9025	Fax. 630.787.0309	Fax: 314.770.0268
Edison NJ	Cha	rlotte NC	Chicago IL	St. Louis, MO

Ohio Valley	Great Lakes	North Central
Ph: 513.943.1145	Ph: 440-604-8421	Ph. 651.633.8015
Fax 513.943.7438	Fax 440-604-8437	Fax. 651.633.7181
Cincinnati OH	Cleveland OH	Minneapolis MN

From a network of Local Drive Solution Centers located throughout the country, Rockwell Automation can provide you with an adjustable speed drive custom-engineered to meet your specific machine or process requirements.

Each Regional Center is fully staffed with experienced application and control engineers providing a single source for all your drive and automation needs, utilizing the Rockwell Automation family of related products.

The problem solvers at each Local Drive Solution Centers form a team of highly qualified people knowledgeable in machine control solutions. Drawing on more than 90 years of experience in supplying equipment to meet the requirements of your industry, your Local Drive Solution Center can provide you with a highly reliable, cost-effective solution to meet your specific control requirements.

8.1	Recommended Spares	. 16	3
-----	--------------------	------	---

# Appendix A

# **Troubleshooting With The Drive Diagnostic Screens**

This appendix lists the suggested variable names, register/bit positions and diagnostic information for fault boxes, LED lights and schematics shown in diagnostic screens for the following drives:

- SD3000 and SD3000 Regen drives
- SA3000 drive
- SA3000 Parallel A,B and C drives
- SB3000 Parallel A,B and C drives
- SA 500 drive
- GV 3000 A-C drive
- FP 3000 D-C drive
- SA3100 drive
- AB1336 drive

## 3.1 Troubleshooting The SD 3000 and SD 3000 Regen Diagnostic Screens





Figure A-1 The SD3000 Diagnostic Screen

Figure A-2 SD3000 Regen Diagnostic Screen

The standard SD3000 (see Figure A-1) and SD3000 Regen (see Figure A-2) Diagnostic screens use the following registers and bit positions for Fault boxes, LED lights and the SCR schematic information needed. **Note:** It is the responsibility of the person configuring the AutoMax software to make sure the correct information is configured within these variables.

## 3.1.1 Fault Boxes

The following table lists the SD 3000 fault names, their suggested variable names, bit positions and under what conditions this bit is set:

Fault Name	Suggested Variable Name	Bit Positio n	Bit Set When
AC Loss Fault	DRV_FLT%	3	an AC voltage stops for 0.5 seconds.
*No PMI Comm	DRV_FLT%	15	there is no communications with the PMI rack.
and	DRV_STAT%	15	
Conduction Fault	DRV_FLT%	5	the "cml_run" signal is turned off and, after 2 seconds, the drive is still in continuous conduction.

Field Loss Fault	DRV_FLT%	6	if the field feedback current is not related to the commanded firing angle.
PMI Power Supply Fault (if lit red)	DRV_FLT%	12	PMI rack power supply voltage levels are not correct.
PMI Bus Fault	DRV_FLT%	13	indicates that the Resolver, the Drive I/O module, and the DC Power Technology module do not respond to requests from the PMI processor.
IOC (Instantaneous Over Current) Fault	DRV_FLT%	4	occurs when armature current feedback is greater than the configured limit.
UDC Run Fault	DRV_FLT%	14	the UDC module drops out of run before the current minor regulator is requested to turn off.
Over Speed Fault	DRV_FLT%	10	the motor velocity exceeds the over speed trip point set in the configuration.
PMI Fan Loss Alarm	DRV_WRN%	12	the airflow through the PMI rack is not being sensed.
Power Tech Fault	DRV_FLT%	11	AC Power Technology Module fails
SCR Open Alarm (Not firing correctly)	DRV_WRN%	0	one of the power module's SCRs is not firing correctly. The schematic diagram shows exactly which SCR is alarmed.
SCR Short Fault	DRV_FLT%	0	one of the power module's SCRs is shorted. The schematic diagram shows exactly which SCR is being shorted.
Resolver Loss Fault	DRV_FLT%	7	the expected relationship between EMF and motor RPM is not maintained. When operating at or below motor base speed, RPM should be directly related to EMF. Above motor base speed, RPM should continue to increase and EMF should stay constant.

Resolver Wire Fault	DRV_FLT%	8	a broken wire is detected on the motor resolver. This is not used when analog
			tachometer is selected for speed feedback.

\*The following logic table explains the Resulting Faults and LED states for "No PMI Comm" faults.

If Variable Name DRV_STAT%/Bit 15	And Variable Name DRV_FLT%/Bit 15	Resulting Fault or LED State
0	0	No PMI Comm
0	1	No PMI Comm
1	0	Comm OK LED
1	1	Comm Fault

If there is no communication to the PMI rack, the purple cross mark is displayed on the diagnostics screen (see Figure A-3).



Figure A-3 Diagnostics Screen When No PMI Communication Occurs

## 3.1.2 LED Lights

The following table lists the LED names, their associated suggested variable names, bit positions and logic for the LED to be on.

LED Name	Suggested Variable Name	Bit Positio n	Logic for LED ON	LED Turns
Power Supply				
PWR OK	DRV_FLT%	12	0	green when the PMI power supply is OK.
PMI Processor				
OK (PMI Proc.)	DRV_STAT%	15	1	green when the PMI processor is OK.
COMM (Communications)	DRV_FLT%	15	0	green when the communications between the UDC and PMI is
OK and	DRV_STAT%	15	1	working OK.
PM FLT (Power Module Fault)	DRV_FLT%	0	1	red when there is either a SCR fault or a field loss fault.
or	DRV_FLT%	6	1	
EXT FLT (External Fault)	DRV_FLT%	3	1	red when there is either an AC synchronization loss fault, an
or	DRV_FLT%	4	1	instantaneous overcurrent fault, an overspeed fault, or a user
or	DRV_FLT%	10	1	configured fault.
or			1	
	IO_CNIKL%	2	1	
RAIL FLT ( Rail Comm Fault )	DRV_WRN%	13	1	red when a rail fault is detected

Resolver and Drive	e IO			
FDBK (Feedback) OK and	DRV_FLT% DRV_FLT%	7 8	0 0	green when the feedback device (resolver or pulse tachometer) is OK. Loss of this LED usually indicates a broken wire to the feedback device.
RPI (Run Permissive Input)	IO_STAT%	0	1	green when the run permissive input is OK.
MCR (M-Contactor)	IO_STAT%	1	1	amber when the status of the "M-Contactor" output bit is high.
AUX IN1 (Auxiliary input1)	IO_STAT%	1	1	green when the auxiliary input 1 is present.
AUX IN2 (Auxiliary input2)	IO_STAT%	2	1	green when the auxiliary input 2 is present.
AUX IN3 (Auxiliary input3)	IO_STAT%	3	1	green when the auxiliary input 3 is present.
AUX IN4 (Auxiliary input4)	IO_STAT%	4	1	green when the auxiliary input 4 is present.
AUX IN5 (Auxiliary input5)	IO_STAT%	5	1	green when the auxiliary input 5 is present.
AUX OUT (Auxiliary output)	IO_CNTRL%	4	1	amber when the auxiliary output is on.
Power Technology	1			
OK (DC Power Technology)	DRV_FLT%	11	0	green when the DC power technology is working OK.

### 3.1.3 SCR Schematic

The following is the list of variables to show an SCR Alarm or Fault. The standard screen looks at the following bit positions of the SCR diagnostic register to determine which SCR has been affected by the Alarm or Fault. The color on the SCR schematic changes ONLY when both an SCR bit has been set and either the SCR Alarm bit (DRV\_WRN%) or SCR Fault bit (DRV\_FLT%) has been set.

SCR Number	Suggested Variable Name	Bit Positio n
1	SCR_DIAG%	0
2	SCR_DIAG%	1
3	SCR_DIAG%	2
4	SCR_DIAG%	3
5	SCR_DIAG%	4
6	SCR_DIAG%	5
*11	SCR_DIAG%	6
*12	SCR_DIAG%	7
*13	SCR_DIAG%	8
*14	SCR_DIAG%	9
*15	SCR_DIAG%	10
*16	SCR_DIAG%	11

\*SCR numbers 11-16 are available on the SD3000 Regen Diagnostic Screen only

## 3.2 Troubleshooting The SA 3000 Diagnostic Screen

The standard SA 3000 (see Figure A-4) Diagnostic screens use the following registers and bit positions for Fault boxes, LED lights and the IGBT schematic information needed. **Note:** It is the responsibility of the person configuring the AutoMax software to make sure the correct information is configured within these variables.



Figure A-4 The A3000 Diagnostic Screen

### 3.2.1 Fault Boxes

The following table lists the SA 3000 fault/warning names, their suggested variable names, register/bit positions and under what conditions this bit is set: Fault boxes are red and Warning boxes are orange.

Fault/Warning Name	Variable Name	Register A /Register B /Bit Position	Set When
DC Bus Over Voltage	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/0	This can either be a fault or a warning. A fault is set when the DC bus voltage exceeds the rating of the Power Module.
	DRV_WRN%	203/1203/0	A warning occurs when the DC bus voltage rises above the configured overvoltage threshold value. The torque is automatically limited to avoid an overvoltage fault
DC Bus Undervoltage Warning	DRV_WRN%	203/1203/1	A warning occurs when the DC bus voltage drops below the configured undervoltage threshold value. The torque is automatically limited to avoid a further drop in the DC bus voltage.
*No PMI Comm and	DRV_FLT% DRV_STAT%	202/1202/15 200/1200/15	A fault occurs when the fiber-optic communication between the PMI processor and the UDC module is lost due to two consecutive errors of any type
PMI PS (Power Supply) Fault	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/12	This fault occurs when the PMI power supply is not working correctly.
DC Bus Over Current Fault	DRV_FLT%	202/1202 /1	This fault occurs when the DC bus current exceeds 125% of the rated Power Module current. Error code 1020 will be displayed in the error log of the UDC task in which the fault occurred

i	1	1	
Ground Current	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/2	This can either be a fault or a warning. A <b>fault</b> condition occurs when ground current exceeds the rating of the Power Module. Error code 1021 will be displayed in the error log of the UDC
		203/1203/2	task in which the fault occurred.
	DRV_WRN%		A <b>warning</b> occurs when the ground current exceeds the configured ground fault current level stored in local tunable GIT_E1%
PMI Bus Fault	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/13	This fault occurs when there is a bus fault in the PMI rack. This is indicated when the Resolver && Drive I/O module and the AC Power Technology module do not respond to requests from the PMI processor.
PMI Fan Loss Warning	DRV_WRN%	203/1203/12	The PMI Fan Loss Warning bit is set when the airflow through the PMI rack is not being sensed.
IOC Fault	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/3	This fault occurs when there is an overcurrent in one of the power devices. Register 204/1204, bits 0-5, indicates which power device detected the overcurrent. Bit 6 of register 204/1204 will also be set if the overcurrent was detected in the Intelligent Power Module.
Resolver Fault			This fault is a combination of Fault Register 202/1202 bits 8 and 9.
	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/8	<b>Bit 8</b> is set if a sine or cosine signal from the resolver is missing due to a broken wire or the resolver gain tunable
		and	(RES_GAN%) has been set too low.
	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/9	<b>Bit 9</b> is set if a blown fuse is detected on the Resolver && Drive I/O board.
UDC Run Fault	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/14	The UDC Run Fault bit is set when the UDC task stops while the minor loop is running in the PMI processor.
AC Power Technology Module Fault	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/11	This bit is set to indicate a problem with the AC Power Technology module, the Local Power Interface (LP1) module in

			the Power Module or the cable connection between them.
LPI (Local Power Interface) Fault	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/4	This fault occurs when the power supply on the Local Power Interface module located in the Power Module is not within tolerance.
CCLK Not Synchronized Warning	DRV_WRN%	203/1203/14	The CCLK Not Synchronized Warning bit is set if CCLK counters in the PMI Regulator and the UDC module are momentarily not synchronized.
Over Speed Fault	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/10	This fault occurs when the motor's velocity exceeds the value entered as the Overspeed Trip (RPM) configuration parameter.
Reference in Limit Warning	DRV_WRN%	203/1203/4	The Reference in Limit Warning bit is set if the reference to the regulator exceeds the maximum value permitted (+- 4095) or is being limited by the system in response to an overvoltage or undervoltage warning.
IPM (Intelligent Power Module) Fault	DEV_DIAG%	204/1204/6	This fault occurs when the gate driver turns off an output power device (IGBT) to protect it from an overcurrent. An IOC fault, Bit 3 of register 202/1202, will also be set.
***Charge Bus Time-out Fault	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/6	<ul> <li>This fault occurs when any of the following conditions occur:</li> <li>The DC bus is not fully charged within 10 seconds after the bus enable bit is set.</li> <li>The drive is on and feedback indicates that the pre-charge contactor has opened.</li> <li>The DC bus voltage is less than the value stored in the Power Loss Fault Threshold (PLT_E0%) tunable variable.</li> </ul>
Over Temperature Fault	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/7	This can either be a fault or a warning. This fault occurs when fault level thermal switch in the Power Module

	DRV_WRN%	203/1203/7	opens. Error code 1016 will be displayed in the error log of the UDC task in which the fault occurred. A warning occurs when warning level thermal switch in the Power Module opens.
Voltage Ripple Warning	DRV_WRN%	203/1203/3	The Voltage Ripple Warning bit is set if the ripple on the DC bus exceeds the configured voltage ripple threshold value.

\*The following logic table explains the Resulting Faults and LED states.

If Variable Name DRV_STAT% 200/1200/Bit 15	And Variable Name DRV_FLT% 202/1202/Bit 15	Resulting Fault or LED State		
0	0	No PMI Comm (Fault)		
0	1	No PMI Comm (Fault)		
1	0	Comm OK (LED State)		
1	1	Comm Fault		

If there is no communication with the PMI rack, the purple cross mark is displayed on the diagnostics screen (see Figure A-3).

### 3.2.2 LED Lights

The following table lists the LED names, their associated suggested variable names, register/bit positions and logic for the LED to be on:

LED Name	Variable Name	Register A /Register B /Bit	Logic for LED ON	LED Turns
Power Supply				
PWR OK	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/12	0	green when the PMI power supply is OK.
PMI Processor	_			
OK (PMI Proc.)	DRV_STAT%	200/1200/15	1	green when the PMI processor is OK.
COMM OK	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/15	0	green when the

				communications between the UDC and PMI is working OK.
and	DRV_STAT%	200/1200/15	1	
PM FLT (Power Module Fault)	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/1	1	red when either a DC Bus Overcurrent fault,
or	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/3	1	an Instantaneous Overcu <del>rr</del> ent fault, a
or	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/4	1	Local Power Interface fault, a Charge Bus Timeout fault, or an
or	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/6	1	Over Temp fault occurs
Or	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/7	1	

EXT FLT (External Fault)	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/0	1	red when there is either an DC Bus Over Voltage
or	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/2	1	fault, a Ground Current fault, a Charge Bus Time
or	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/6	1	Out fault, an Over Speed fault, or a user configured fault
or	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/10	1	
or	IO_CNTRL%	101/1101/2	1	
RAIL FLT (Rail Comm. Fault)	DRV_WRN%	203/1203/13	1	red when a rail fault is detected.
Resolver and Drive	I/O			
FDBK OK (Feedback OK)	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/7	0	green when the resolver feedback device is OK.
and	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/8	0	Loss of this LED usually indicates a broken wire to the feedback device
RPI (Run Permissive Input)	IO_STAT%	201/1201/0	1	green when the run permissive input is OK.
MCR (M-Contactor)	IO_STAT%	201/1201/1	1	amber when the status of the "M-Contactor" output bit is high.
AUX IN1	IO_STAT%	201/1201/1	1	green when the auxiliary input 1 is present.
AUX IN2	IO_STAT%	201/1201/2	1	green when the auxiliary input 2 is present.
AUX IN3	IO_STAT%	201/1201/3	1	green when the auxiliary input 3 is present.
AUX IN4	IO_STAT%	201/1201/4	1	green when the auxiliary input 4 is present.
AUX IN5	IO_STAT%	201/1201/5	1	green when the auxiliary input 5 is present.

AUX OUT	IO_CNTRL%	101/1101/4	1	amber when the auxiliary output is on.		
AC Power Technology						
OK	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/11	0	green when the AC power technology card is working OK.		

### 3.2.3 IGBT Schematic

The following is the list of variables that indicate an IGBT Short Fault. The standard screen looks at the following bit positions in the IGBT diagnostic register to determine which IGBT has been affected by the fault. The color on the IGBT schematic changes ONLY when both an IGBT bit has been set and the IGBT Short Fault bit has been set.

IGBT Number	Variable Name	Register A/ Register B/ Bit	Fault Red on IGBT Schematic When	
Phase U Upper	DEV_DIAG%	204/1204/0	Phase U upper power device detects an over current	
Phase V Upper	DEV_DIAG%	204/1204/1	Phase V upper power device detects an over current	
Phase W Upper	DEV_DIAG%	204/1204/2	Phase W upper power device detects an over current	
Phase U Lower	DEV_DIAG%	204/1204/3	Phase U lower power device detects an over current	
Phase V Lower	DEV_DIAG%	204/1204/4	Phase V lower power device detects an over current	
Phase W Lower	DEV_DIAG%	204/1204/5	Phase W lower power device detects an over current	
### 3.3 Troubleshooting The SA 3000 Parallel A, B and C Diagnostic Screens

The standard SA 3000 Parallel (see Figure A-5) Diagnostic screens uses the following registers and bit positions for Fault boxes, LED lights and the IGBT schematic information needed. **Note:** It is the responsibility of the person configuring the AutoMax software to make sure the correct information is configured within these variables.



Figure A-5 The SA3000 Parallel 3 Diagnostic Screen

### 3.3.1 Fault Boxes

The following table lists the SA 3000 parallel fault names, their suggested variable names, register/bit positions and under what conditions this bit is set:

Fault or Warning Name	Variable Name	Register A /Register B /Bit	Set When
DC Bus Over Voltage (High Bus) Fault	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/0	This can either be a fault or a warning. A fault is set when the DC bus voltage exceeds the rating of the Power Module.
			A warning occurs when the DC bus voltage rises above the configured overvoltage threshold value. The torque is automatically limited to avoid an overvoltage fault.
DC Bus Undervoltage Warning	DRV_WRN%	203/1203/1	A warning occurs when the DC bus voltage drops below the configured undervoltage threshold value. The torque is automatically limited to avoid a further drop in the DC bus voltage.
*No PMI Comm Fault	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/15	A fault occurs when the fiber-optic communication between the PMI processor and the UDC module is lost due to two consecutive errors of any type.
and	DRV_STAT%	200/1200/15	
PMI PS (Power Supply) Fault	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/12	This fault occurs when the PMI power supply is not working correctly.

DC Bus Over Current (Low Bus) Fault	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/1	This fault occurs when the DC bus current exceeds 125% of the rated Power Module current. Error code 1020 will be displayed in the error log of the UDC task in which the fault occurred.
Ground Current Fault or Warning	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/2	This can either be a fault or a warning. A <b>fault</b> condition occurs when ground current exceeds the rating of the Power Module. Error code 1021 will be displayed in the error log of the UDC task in which the fault occurred.
	DRV_WRN%	203/1203/2	A <b>warning</b> occurs when the ground current exceeds the configured ground fault current level stored in local tunable GIT_E1%.
PMI Bus Fault	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/13	This fault occurs when there is a bus fault in the PMI rack. This is indicated when the Resolver & Drive I/O module and the AC Power Technology module do not respond to requests from the PMI processor.
PMI Fan Loss Warning	DRV_WRN%	203/1203/12	The PMI Fan Loss Warning bit is set when the airflow through the PMI rack is not being sensed.
IOC (Instantaneous Overcurrent) Fault	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/3	This fault occurs when there is an overcurrent in one of the power devices. Registers 204/1204, bits 0-5, indicate which power device detected the overcurrent. Bit 6 of register 204/1204 will also be set if the overcurrent was detected in the Intelligent Power Module.

Resolver Fault			This fault is a combination of Fault Register 202/1202 bits 8 and 9.
	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/8	<b>Bit 8</b> is set if a sine or cosine signal from the resolver is missing due to a broken wire or the resolver gain tunable (RES_GAN%) has been set too low.
	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/9	<b>Bit 9</b> is set if a blown fuse is detected on the Resolver & Drive I/O board.
UDC Run Fault	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/14	The UDC Run Fault bit is set when the UDC task stops while the minor loop is running in the PMI processor.
AC PTM (Power Technology Module) Fault	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/11	This bit is set to indicate a problem with the AC Power Technology module, the Local Power Interface (LP1) module in the Power Module or the cable connection between them.
LPI (Local Power Interface) Fault	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/4	This fault occurs when the power supply on the Local Power Interface module located in the Power Module is not within tolerance.
CCLK Not Synchronized Warning	DRV_WRN%	203/1203/14	The CCLK Not Synchronized Warning bit is set if CCLK counters in the PMI Regulator and the UDC module are momentarily not synchronized.
Over Speed Fault	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/10	This fault occurs when the motor's velocity exceeds the value entered as the Overspeed Trip (RPM) configuration parameter.

Reference in Limit Warning	DRV_WRN%	203/1203/4	The Reference in Limit Warning bit is set if the reference to the regulator exceeds the maximum value permitted (+- 4095) or is being limited by the system in response to an overvoltage or undervoltage warning.
Voltage Ripple Warning	DRV_WRN%	203/1203/3	The Voltage Ripple Warning bit is set if the ripple on the DC bus exceeds the configured voltage ripple threshold value.
IPM (Intelligent Power Module) Fault	DEV_DIAGn% Where n= Unit 1,2, or 3	204/1204/6	This fault occurs when the gate driver turns off an output power device (IGBT) to protect it from an overcurrent. An IOC fault, Bit 3 of register 202/1202, will also be set.
LS (Load Sharing) Warning	DRV_WRN%	203/1203/6	a GDI (Gate Driver Interface) indicates that unit 'n' detected a problem with current sharing between power modules.
*Unit1 IPM (Intelligent Power Module) Fault	DEV_DIAG1%	204/1204/6	Unit 1 IPM fault is detected
*Unit2 IPM (Intelligent Power Module) Fault	DEV_DIAG2%	220/1220/6	Unit 2 IPM fault is detected
*Unit3 IPM (Intelligent Power Module) Fault	DEV_DIAG3%	221/1221/6	Unit 3 IPM fault is detected
GDI (Gate Driver Interface) Fault	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/5	the power on the Gate Driver Interface is not within tolerance
*Unit 1 GDI Fault	DEV_DIAG1%	204/1204/7	Unit 1 detects a problem with its gate driver interface power supply

*Unit 2 GDI Fault	DEV_DIAG2%	220/1220/7	Unit 2 detects a problem with its gate driver interface power supply
*Unit 3 GDI Fault	DEV_DIAG3%	221/1221/7	Unit 3 detects a problem with its gate driver interface power supply
Charge Bus Time-out Fault	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/6	<ul> <li>This fault occurs when any of the following conditions occur:</li> <li>The DC bus is not fully charged within 10 seconds after the bus enable bit is set.</li> <li>The drive is on and feedback indicates that the pre-charge contactor has opened.</li> <li>The DC bus voltage is less than the value stored in the Power Loss Fault Threshold (PLT_E0%) tunable variable.</li> </ul>
*Unit1 Charge Fault	DEV_DIAG1%	204/1204/8	Unit 1 detects a problem with charge time out
*Unit2 Charge Fault	DEV_DIAG2%	220/1220/8	Unit 2 detects a problem with charge time out
*Unit3 Charge Fault	DEV_DIAG3%	221/1221/8	Unit 3 detects a problem with charge time out
Over Temp Fault	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/7	This can either be a fault or a warning. This fault occurs when fault level thermal switch in the Power Module opens. Error code 1016 will be displayed in the error log of the UDC task in which the fault occurred.
	DRV_WRN%	203/1203/7	thermal switch in the Power Module opens.

*Unit 1 Over Temp Fault	DEV_DIAG1%	204/1204/12	Unit 1 detects an over temperature
*Unit 2 Over Temp Fault	DEV_DIAG2%	220/1220/12	Unit 2 detects an over temperature
*Unit 3 Over Temp Fault	DEV_DIAG3%	221/1221/12	Unit 3 detects an over temperature

\*The following logic table explains the Resulting Faults and LED states.

If Variable Name DRV_STAT% 200/1200/Bit 15	And Variable Name DRV_FLT% 202/1202/Bit 15	Resulting Fault or LED State
0	0	No PMI Comm (Fault)
0	1	No PMI Comm (Fault)
1	0	Comm OK (LED State)
1	1	Comm Fault

If there is no communication with the PMI rack, the purple cross mark is displayed on the diagnostics screen (see Figure A-3).

# 3.3.2 LED Lights

The following table lists the LED names, their associated suggested variable names, register/bit positions and logic for the LED to be on.

LED Name	Variable Name	Register A /Register B /Bit	Logic for LED ON	LED Turns
Power Supply				
PWR OK(Power Supply OK)	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/1 2	0	green when the PMI power supply is OK.
PMI Processor				
OK (PMI Processor)	DRV_STAT%	200/1200/1 5	1	green when the PMI processor is OK.
COMM OK (Communications OK)	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/1 5	0	green when the communications between the UDC and PMI is working OK.
and	DRV_STAT%	200/1200/1 5	1	
PM FLT(Power Module Fault)	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/1	1	red when either a DC Bus Over Current fault, an Instantaneous Over
or	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/3	1	Current fault, Local Power Interface fault, a
or	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/4	1	fault, or an Over Temp Fault occurs
or	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/6	1	
or	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/7	1	

EXT FLT (External Fault)	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/0	1	red when there is either an DC Bus Over Voltage fault, a Ground Current
or	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/2	1	fault, a Charge Bus Time Out fault, an Over Speed fault or a user
or	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/6	1	configured fault.
or	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/1 0	1	
or	IO_CNTRL%	101/1101/2	1	
RAIL FLT (Rail Comm Fault)	DRV_WRN%	203/1203/1 3	1	red when a rail fault is detected.
Resolver and Drive	I/O			
FDBK OK (Feedback OK)	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/7	0	green when the resolver feedback device is OK. Loss of this LED usually
and	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/8	0	indicates a broken wire to the feedback device.
RPI (Run Permissive Input)	IO_STAT%	201/1201/0	1	green when the run permissive input is OK.
MCR (M-Contactor)	IO_STAT%	201/1201/1	1	amber when the status of the "M-Contactor" output bit is high.
AUX IN1 (Auxiliary input 1)	IO_STAT%	201/1201/1	1	green when the auxiliary input 1 is present.
AUX IN2 (Auxiliary input 2)	IO_STAT%	201/1201/2	1	green when the auxiliary input 2 is present.
AUX IN3 (Auxiliary input 3)	IO_STAT%	201/1201/3	1	green when the auxiliary input 3 is present.
AUX IN4 (Auxiliary input 4)	IO_STAT%	201/1201/4	1	green when the auxiliary input 4 is present.
AUX IN5 (Auxiliary input 5)	IO_STAT%	201/1201/5	1	green when the auxiliary input 5 is present.
AUX OUT (Auxiliary output)	IO_CNTRL%	101/1101/4	1	amber when the auxiliary output is on.

AC Power Technology					
OK (DC Power Technology)	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/1 1	0	green when the AC power technology card is working OK.	

### 3.3.3 IGBT Schematic

The following is the list of variables to show an IGBT Short Fault. The standard screen looks at the following bits of the IGBT diagnostic register to determine which IGBT has been affected by the Fault. The color on the IGBT schematic changes ONLY when both an IGBT bit has been set and the IGBT Short Fault bit has been set.

Unit x IGBT Number	Variable Name	Register A/ Register B /Bit	Fault Red on IGBT Schematic When
Phase U Upper	DEV_DIAG1% DEV_DIAG2% DEV_DIAG3%	204/1204/0 220/1220/0 221/1221/0	Phase U upper power device detects an over current
Phase V Upper	DEV_DIAG1% DEV_DIAG2% DEV_DIAG3%	204/1204/1 220/1220/1 221/1221/1	Phase V upper power device detects an over current
Phase W Upper	DEV_DIAG1% DEV_DIAG2% DEV_DIAG3%	204/1204/2 220/1220/2 221/1221/2	Phase W upper power device detects an over current
Phase U Lower	DEV_DIAG1% DEV_DIAG2% DEV_DIAG3%	204/1204/3 220/1220/3 221/1221/3	Phase U lower power device detects an over current
Phase V Lower	DEV_DIAG1% DEV_DIAG2% DEV_DIAG3%	204/1204/4 220/1220/4 221/1221/4	Phase V lower power device detects an over current
Phase W Lower	DEV_DIAG1% DEV_DIAG2% DEV_DIAG3%	204/1204/5 220/1220/4 221/1221/4	Phase W lower power device detects an over current

Where x = 1, 2 or 3

Unit x IGBT Number	Variable Name DEV_DIAG x%	Register A/ Register B /Bit	Alarm Yellow on IGBT Schematic When
Phase U Current Sharing	DEV_DIAG1% DEV_DIAG2% DEV_DIAG3%	204/1204/13 220/1220/13 221/1221/13	Unit 'x' detects a problem with current sharing on phase U between power modules. Unit 'x' is not carrying its share of the phase U current.
Phase V Current Sharing	DEV_DIAG1% DEV_DIAG2% DEV_DIAG3%	204/1204/14 220/1220/14 221/1221/14	Unit 'x' detects a problem with current sharing on phase V between power modules. Unit 'x' is not carrying its share of the phase V current.
Phase W Current Sharing	DEV_DIAG1% DEV_DIAG2% DEV_DIAG3%	204/1204/15 220/1220/15 221/1221/15	Unit 'x' detects a problem with current sharing on phase W between power modules. Unit 'x' is not carrying its share of the phase W current.

Where x = 1, 2 or 3

## 3.4 Troubleshooting The SB 3000 Parallel A, B and C Diagnostic Screens

The standard SB 3000 Parallel (see Figure A-5, Figure A-6) Diagnostic screen uses the following registers and bit positions for Fault boxes, LED lights and the IGBT schematic information needed. **Note:** It is the responsibility of the person configuring the AutoMax software to make sure the correct information is configured within these variables.



Figure A-6 The SB3000 Parallel 3 Diagnostic Screen

# 3.4.1 Fault Boxes

The following table lists the SB 3000 parallel fault and warning names, their suggested variable names, register/bit positions and under what conditions this bit is set:

Fault Name	Variable Name	Register A /Register B /Bit Position	Set When
DC Bus Over Voltage (High Bus)	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/0	This can either be a fault or a warning. A fault is set when the DC bus voltage exceeds the rating of the Power Module.
	DRV_WRN%	203/1203/0	A warning occurs when the DC bus voltage rises above the configured overvoltage threshold value. The torque is automatically limited to avoid an overvoltage fault.
DC Bus Undervoltage Warning	DRV_WRN%	203/1203/1	A warning occurs when the DC bus voltage drops below the configured undervoltage threshold value. The torque is automatically limited to avoid a further drop in the DC bus voltage.
*No PMI Comm	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/15	A fault occurs when the fiber-optic communication between the PMI processor and the UDC module is lost due to two consecutive errors of any type.
PMI PS (Power Supply) Fault	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/12	This fault occurs when the PMI power supply is not working correctly.

DC Bus Over Current (Low Bus)	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/1	This fault occurs when the DC bus current exceeds 125% of the rated Power Module current. Error code 1020 will be displayed in the error log of the UDC task in which the fault occurred.
Ground Current	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/2	This can either be a fault or a warning. A fault condition occurs when ground current exceeds the rating of the Power Module. Error code 1021 will be displayed in the error log of the UDC task in which the fault occurred.
	DRV_WRN%	203/1203/2	A warning occurs when the ground current exceeds the configured ground fault current level stored in local tunable GIT_E1%.
PMI Read/Write Fault	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/13	This fault occurs when the PMI read or write operation fails.
PMI Fan Loss	DRV_WRN%	203/1203/12	The PMI Fan Loss Warning bit is set when the airflow through the PMI rack is not being sensed.
IOC (Instantaneous Over Current) Fault	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/3	This fault occurs when there is an overcurrent in one of the power devices. Registers 204/1204, bits 0- 5, indicate which power device detected the overcurrent. Bit 6 of register 204/1204 will also be set if the overcurrent was detected in the Intelligent Power Module.
Phase Loss Warning	DRV_WRN%	203/1203/3	This warning bit is set if a phase loss occurs in the AC line. Note that the phase loss diagnostic cannot detect a phase loss if there is no load current.

			*
UDC Run Fault	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/14	The UDC Run Fault bit is set when the UDC task stops while the minor loop is running in the PMI processor.
AC PTM (Power Technology Module) Fault	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/11	This bit is set to indicate a problem with the AC Power Technology module, the Local Power Interface (LP1) module in the Power Module or the cable connection between them.
CCLK Not Synchronized Warning	DRV_WRN%	203/1203/14	The CCLK Not Synchronized Warning bit is set if CCLK counters in the PMI Regulator and the UDC module are momentarily not synchronized.
LPI (Local Power Interface) Fault	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/4	This fault occurs when the power supply on the Local Power Interface module located in the Power Module is not within tolerance.
Power Module Overload Warning	DRV_WRN%	203/1203/9	This warning is set if the continuous current rating of the Rectifier is exceeded for a period of approximately 5 minutes and does not decrease and maintain the continuous rating for at least 45 minutes
Power Loss Fault (No PMI Power)	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/10	This fault occurs when an AC line power is lost for more than ten seconds while in run.
	DRV_WRN%	203/1203/10	

Reference In Limit Warning	DRV_WRN%	203/1203/4	This warning bit is set if the VDC reference (102/1102) is less than the minimum or greater than the maximum allowed, where; Minimum=1.1*1.414*AC line VRMS Maximum=875 volts
IPM (Intelligent Power Module) Fault	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/3	This fault occurs when the gate driver turns off an output power device (IGBT) to protect it from an overcurrent. An IOC fault, Bit 3 of register 202/1202, will also be set.
GDI (Gate Driver Interface) Fault	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/5	This fault occurs when the power on the GDI is not within tolerance.
Charge Bus Time-out	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/6	This fault occurs when any of the following conditions occur. The DC bus is not fully charged within 10 seconds after the bus enable bit is set. The drive is on and feedback indicates that the pre-charge contactor has opened. The DC bus voltage is less than the value stored in the Power Loss Fault Threshold (PLT_E0%) tunable variable
Over Temp Fault	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/7	This can either be a fault or a warning. This <b>fault</b> occurs when fault level thermal switch in the Power Module opens. Error code 1016 will be displayed in the error log of the UDC task in which the fault occurred.
	DKV_WKN%	203/1203//	A warning occurs when warning level thermal switch in the Power Module opens.

LS (Load Sharing) Warning	DRV_WRN%	203/1203/6	This warning occurs when a GDI indicates that unit 'n' detected a problem with current sharing between power modules. A GDI indicates that unit 'x' (where x = A, B or C) detected a problem with current sharing between power modules.
Unit1 IPM (Intelligent Power Module) Fault	DEV_DIAG1%	204/1204/6	Unit 1 Intelligent Power Module fault is detected.
Unit2 IPM (Intelligent Power Module) Fault	DEV_DIAG2%	220/1220/6	Unit 2 Intelligent Power Module fault detected.
Unit3 IPM (Intelligent Power Module) Fault	DEV_DIAG3%	221/1221/6	Unit 3 Intelligent Power Module fault detected.
Unit 1 GDI (Gate Driver Interface) Fault	DEV_DIAG1%	204/1204/7	Unit 1 detects a problem with its Gate Driver Interface power supply.
Unit 2 GDI (Gate Driver Interface) Fault	DEV_DIAG2%	220/1220/7	Unit 2 detects a problem with its Gate Driver Interface power supply.
Unit 3 GDI (Gate Driver Interface) Fault	DEV_DIAG3%	221/1221/7	Unit 3 detects a problem with its Gate Driver Interface power supply.
Unit1 Charge Fault	DEV_DIAG1%	204/1204/8	Unit 1 detects a problem with charge time out.
Unit2 Charge Fault	DEV_DIAG2%	220/1220/8	Unit 2 detects a problem with charge time out.
Unit3 Charge Fault	DEV_DIAG3%	221/1221/8	Unit 3 detects a problem with charge time out.
Unit 1 Over Temp Fault	DEV_DIAG1%	204/1204/12	Unit 1 detects an over temperature.
Unit 2 Over Temp Fault	DEV_DIAG2%	220/1220/12	Unit 2 detects an over temperature.
Unit 3 Over Temp Fault	DEV_DIAG3%	221/1221/12	Unit 3 detects an over temperature.

\*The following logic table explains the Resulting Faults and LED states.

If Variable Name DRV_STAT% 200/1200/Bit 15	And Variable Name DRV_FLT% 202/1202/Bit 15	Resulting Fault or LED State
0	0	No PMI Comm (Fault)
0	1	No PMI Comm (Fault)
1	0	Comm OK (LED State)
1	1	Comm Fault

If there is no communication with the PMI rack, the purple cross mark is displayed on the diagnostics screen (see Figure A-3).

# 3.4.2 LED Lights

The following table lists the LED names, their associated suggested variable names, register/bit positions and logic for the LED to be on.

LED Name	Variable Name	Register A/ Register B/ Bit Position	Logic for LED ON	LED Turns
Power Supply				
PWR OK(Power Supply OK)	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/12	0	green when the PMI power supply is OK.
PMI Processor				
OK (PMI Processor)	DRV_STAT%	200/1200/15	1	green when the PMI processor is OK.
COMM OK (Communications OK)	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/15	0	green when the communications between the UDC and PMI is working OK.
and	DRV_STAT%	200/1200/15	1	
PM FLT(Power Module Fault)	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/0	1	red when either a DC Bus Over Voltage Fault, a DC Bus Over Current Fault,
or	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/1	1	an Instantaneous Over Current Fault, Local Power Interface Fault, a Charge
or	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/3	1	Bus Timeout Fault, or an Over Temp Fault occurs
or	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/4	1	
or	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/6	1	
or	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/7	1	

EXT FLT	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/2	1	red when either Ground	
(External Fault)				Current Fault, a Charge	
				Power Loss Fault or a user	
or	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/6	1	configured fault occurs	
or	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/10	1		
or	IO_CNTRL%	101/1101/2	1		
RAIL FLT	DRV_WRN%	203/1203/13	1	red when a rail fault is	
(Rail Comm Fault)				detected.	
Resolver and Drive	I/O				
FDBK OK				Always on	
(Feedback OK)		•	·		
RPI (Run	IO_STAT%	201/1201/0	1	green when the run	
Permissive Input)				permissive input is OK.	
MCR	IO_STAT%	201/1201/1	1	amber when the status of	
(M-Contactor)				the "M-Contactor" output	
				bit is high.	
AUX IN1	IO_STAT%	201/1201/1	1	green when the auxiliary	
(Auxiliary input 1)				input 1 is present.	
AUX IN2	IO_STAT%	201/1201/2	1	green when the auxiliary	
(Auxiliary input 2)				input 2 is present.	
AUX IN3	O_STAT%	201/1201/3	1	green when the auxiliary	
(Auxiliary input 3)				input 3 is present.	
AUX IN4	IO_STAT%	201/1201/4	1	green when the auxiliary	
(Auxiliary input 4)				input 4 is present.	
AUX IN5	IO_STAT%	201/1201/5	1	green when the auxiliary	
(Auxiliary input 5)				input 5 is present.	
AUX OUT	IO_CNTRL%	101/1101/4	1	amber when the auxiliary	
(Auxiliary output)				output is on.	
AC Power Technology					
OK(AC Power	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/11		green when the AC power	
Technology)				technology card is working	
				OK.	

### 3.4.3 IGBT Schematic

The following is the list of variables to show an IGBT Short Fault. The standard screen looks at the following bits of the IGBT diagnostic register to determine which IGBT has been affected by the Fault. The color on the IGBT schematic changes ONLY when both an IGBT bit has been set and the IGBT Short Fault bit has been set.

Unit x IGBT Number	Variable Name DEV_DIAGx%	Register A/ Register B/ Bit	Fault Red on IGBT Schematic When
Phase U Upper	DEV_DIAG1% DEV_DIAG2% DEV_DIAG3%	204/1204/0 220/1220/0 221/1221/0	Phase U upper power device detects an over current
Phase V Upper	DEV_DIAG1% DEV_DIAG2% DEV_DIAG3%	204/1204/1 220/1220/1 221/1221/1	Phase V upper power device detects an over current
Phase W Upper	DEV_DIAG1% DEV_DIAG2% DEV_DIAG3%	204/1204/2 220/1220/2 221/1221/2	Phase W upper power device detects an over current
Phase U Lower	DEV_DIAG1% DEV_DIAG2% DEV_DIAG3%	204/1204/3 220/1220/3 221/1221/3	Phase U lower power device detects an over current
Phase V Lower	DEV_DIAG1% DEV_DIAG2% DEV_DIAG3%	204/1204/4 220/1220/4 221/1221/4	Phase V lower power device detects an over current
Phase W Lower	DEV_DIAG1% DEV_DIAG2% DEV_DIAG3%	204/1204/5 220/1220/5 221/1221/5	Phase W lower power device detects an over current

Where x = 1, 2 or 3

Unit x IGBT Number	Variable Name DEV_DIAGx%	Register A/ Register B/ Bit Position	Alarm Yellow on IGBT Schematic When
Phase U Current Sharing	DEV_DIAG1% DEV_DIAG2% DEV_DIAG3%	204/1204/13 220/1220/13 221/1221/13	Unit 'x' detects a problem with current sharing on phase U between power modules. Unit 'x' is not carrying its share of the phase U current.
Phase V Current Sharing	DEV_DIAG1% DEV_DIAG2% DEV_DIAG3%	204/1204/14 220/1220/14 221/1221/14	Unit 'x' detects a problem with current sharing on phase V between power modules. Unit 'x' is not carrying its share of the phase V current.
Phase W Current Sharing	DEV_DIAG1% DEV_DIAG2% DEV_DIAG3%	204/1204/15 220/1220/15 221/1221/15	Unit 'x' detects a problem with current sharing on phase W between power modules. Unit 'x' is not carrying its share of the phase W current.

Where x = 1, 2 or 3

# 3.5 Troubleshooting The SA 500 Diagnostic Screen

The standard SA 500 (see Figure A-7) Diagnostic screens use the following registers and bit positions to animate Fault boxes and LED lights. **Note:** It is the responsibility of the person configuring the AutoMax software to make sure the correct information is configured within these variables.

	SIGMA U	Jniversal Ope	rator Interface - [PMI	SA500 Diagnost	ics]
<u>H</u> elp!	<u>R</u> eturn!				
	PWR OK OK COMM OK P.M. FLT			DS Screws	
	EXTFLT ( RAIL FLT ( FDBK OK ( RPI (		DC Bus Over Volt	No PMI Comm	PMI PS Fault
	MCR AUX IH1 AUX IH2 AUX IH3 AUX IH3	Power Module PS Fault	Resolver Wire Flt	PMI Bus Fault	
	AUX IN5	Š	IOC Fault	OverSpeed Fault	OverTemp Fault
	utoMax				
Dis	stributed Power	System			
AC	Power Module	RELIANCE <b>P</b>			

Figure A-7 The SA500 Diagnostic Screen

### 3.5.1 Fault Boxes

The following table lists the SA 500 fault names, their suggested variable names, bit positions and under what conditions this bit is set:

Fault Name	Variable Name	Bit Position	Set When
DC Bus Over Voltage	DRV_FLT%	2	the DC bus exceeds the maximum voltage allowed
*No PMI Comm	DRV_FLT%	15	there is no communications with PMI rack.
and	DRV_STAT%	15	

PMI PS (Power Supply) Fault	DRV_FLT%	12	the +5v, +15v, or -15v power supply fails
Power Module PS Fault	DRV_FLT%	3	Voltage (Vcc) on the power module is too low
Resolver Wire Fault	DRV_FLT%	8	a broken resolver wire is detected
PMI Bus Fault	DRV_FLT%	13	the address and data bus fails
IOC (Instantaneous Overcurrent) Fault	DRV_FLT%	1	there is an over current condition detected
Over Speed Fault	DRV_FLT%	10	over speed is detected. In vector mode, this bit is set when slip exceeds 100%
Over Temp Fault	DRV_FLT%	0	the temperature of the heat sink exceeds the maximum rating

\*The following logic table explains the Resulting Faults and LED states.

If Variable Name DRV_STAT%/Bit 15	And Variable Name DRV_FLT%/Bit 15	Resulting Fault or LED State
0	0	No PMI Comm (Fault)
0	1	No PMI Comm (Fault)
1	0	Comm OK (LED State)
1	1	Comm Fault

If there is no communication with the PMI rack, the purple cross mark is displayed on the diagnostics screen (see Figure A-3).

# 3.5.2 LED Lights

The following table lists the LED names, their associated suggested variable names, bit positions and logic for the LED to be on.

LED Name	Variable Name	Bit Positio n	Logic for LED ON	LED Turns
Power Supply				
PWR OK ( Power Supply OK )	DRV_FLT%	12	0	green when the PMI power supply is OK.
PMI Processor				
OK (PMI Processor)	DRV_STAT%	15	1	green when the PMI processor is OK.
COMM OK (Communications OK )	DRV_FLT%	15	0	green when the communications between the UDC and PMI is working OK.
and	DRV_STAT%	15	1	
PM FLT (Power Module Fault)	DRV_FLT%	0	1	red when there is an Over Temp Fault or a power module power supply fault.
or	DRV_FLT%	3	1	
EXT FLT ( External Fault )	DRV_FLT%	1	1	red when there is either an Instantaneous Overcurrent fault, an Over Speed fault, or a user configured fault.
or	DRV_FLT%	10	1	
or	IO_CNTRL%	2	1	
RAIL FLT (Rail Comm Fault)	DRV_WRN%	13	1	red when a rail fault is detected.

Resolver and Drive	Resolver and Drive I/O				
FDBK OK ( Feedback OK )	DRV_FLT%	8	0	green when the resolver feedback device is OK. Loss of this LED usually indicates a broken wire to the feedback device.	
RPI (Run Permissive Input)	IO_STAT%	0	1	green when the run permissive input is OK.	
MCR (M-Contactor)	IO_STAT%	1	1	amber when the status of the "M-Contactor" output bit is high.	
AUX IN1 (Auxiliary input 1)	IO_STAT%	1	1	green when the auxiliary input 1 is present.	
AUX IN2 (Auxiliary input 2)	IO_STAT%	2	1	green when the auxiliary input 2 is present.	
AUX IN3 (Auxiliary input 3)	IO_STAT%	3	1	green when the auxiliary input 3 is present.	
AUX IN4 (Auxiliary input 4)	IO_STAT%	4	1	green when the auxiliary input 4 is present.	
AUX IN5 (Auxiliary input 5)	IO_STAT%	5	1	green when the auxiliary input 5 is present.	
AUX OUT (Auxiliary output)	IO_CNTRL%	4	1	amber when the auxiliary output is on.	

## 3.6 Troubleshooting The GV 3000 A-C Drive Diagnostic Screens

The standard GV 3000 A-C Drive (see Figure A-8) Diagnostic screen uses the following bit positions in registers # 12 and #13 for LED light information needed. **Note:** It is the responsibility of the person configuring the AutoMax software to make sure the correct information is configured within these variables.

	SIGMA Un	iversal Opera	ator Interface -	ITALIMPIANT	- [GV3000 Di	agnostics]
elp!	<u>R</u> eturn!					
	No. 1 Payoff Reel					
	High D-C Bus	D-C Braking Fault	Function Loss	Network Comm. Loss	Precharge Relay Failure	High Time ID Abort
	Low D-C Bus	Self-tuning Failure	Parameter Memory Failure	Drive Not Identified	High Line Voltage	EPROM Write Failure
	Overcurrent Steady State	0 ver- Frequency	Overspeed	Power Unit Overload	Earth Current Failure	Asymetrical Bus Charge
	Overcurrent Accelerating	Output Phase Loss	Overtemp	Missing P/U ID Connector	Unselected Power Unit	Input Phase Loss
	Overcurrent Decelerating	Serial Port Interrupt	Electronic Thermal O/L	Encoder Loss	Fatal Unexpected Error	
	First Fault:     Overcurrent - steady state.       Second Fault:     None.       Self-Tune:     Self tuning successful.					
	GV A-C Dr	300 ive	)0	ļ	RELIAN	

Figure A-8 The GV3000 A-C Drive Diagnostic Screen

#### 3.6.1 Fault Boxes

The following table lists the GV 3000 fault names, their suggested variable names, bit positions in registers #12 and #13, and under what conditions this bit is set:

Fault Name	Suggested Variable Name	Register / Bit Position	Set When
High D-C Bus	DRV_FLT1	12/4	D-C bus voltage too high (capacitor protection). Deceleration time may be too short.
Low D-C Bus	DRV_FLT1	12/5	D-C bus voltage too low. Line dip too long or input rectifier diodes defective.

Overcurrent Steady State	DRV_FLT1	12/0	Trips at 137% load (based on inverter type current). Check power module rating.
Overcurrent Accelerating	DRV_FLT1	12/1	Acceleration time is too short.
Overcurrent Decelerating	DRV_FLT1	12/2	Deceleration time is too short.
D-C Braking Fault	DRV_FLT1	12/3	D-C voltage is too high.
Self-tuning Failure	DRV_FLT1	12/12	Self-tuning failure. Refer to parameter U.009 for details.
Overfrequency	DRV_FLT1	12/15	Drive has exceeded maximum allowable output frequency.
Motor Phase Loss	DRV_FLT1	12/14	Phase lost between drive and motor.
Serial Port Spurious Interrupt	DRV_FLT1	12/11	Spurious interrupt received from the serial port. The interrupt received was not receive, transmit, overrun or any expected interrupt while the serial port was the control source (P.000=3)
Function Loss	DRV_FLT1	12/8	Function loss input on control terminal is open. Check external interlock between terminals 16 and 20.
Parameter Non- Volatile Memory Failure	DRV_FLT1	12/9	Failure on write to non-volatile memory. Bad NVRAM.
Overspeed	DRV_FLT1	12/13	RPM is above 130% maximum speed.
Overtemperature	DRV_FLT1	12/7	Cooling fan failure
Electronic Thermal Overload	DRV_FLT1	12/6	Power module overloaded.
Network Comm. Loss	DRV_FLT2	13/0	Communications with the AutoMax network has been lost.
Drive Not Identified	DRV_FLT2	13/3	Drive parameters have been restored to power-up defaults. Regulator has not been configured to match Power Module.
Power Unit Overload	DRV_FLT2	13/6	Power Module Overloaded; Too high D-C Braking Voltage (H.007) or Torque Boost

			(H.003)
Missing P/U ID Connector	DRV_FLT2	13/9	Bad or disconnected cable between Regulator and Power Module.
Encoder Loss	DRV_FLT2	13/12	Drive is not detecting feedback from the pulse tachometer.
Precharge Relay Failure	DRV_FLT2	13/1	
High Line Voltage	DRV_FLT2	13/4	Input line voltage > 15% above value of line voltage.
Earth Current Failure (ground fault)	DRV_FLT2	13/7	Unintentional Grounding
Unselected Power Unit	DRV_FLT2	13/10	Drive started but identification Result=zero
Fatal Unexpected Error	DRV_FLT2	13/15	Indicates a fatal fault occurred before power was lost. Contact Rockwell Automation or observe the drive for subsequent fatal errors before turning off power. Fatal fault codes are lost after power loss.
High Time ID Abort	DRV_FLT2	13/2	Identification process for V/Hz has been aborted.
EPROM Write Failure	DRV_FLT2	13/5	Failure on write to non-volatile memory, bad NVRAM.
Asymmetrical Bus Charge	DRV_FLT2	13/8	Bad Power Module
Input Phase Loss	DRV_FLT2	13/11	Voltage ripple on D-C bus due to missing input phase or an imbalance between phases.

If there is no network communication with the drive, the purple cross mark is displayed on the diagnostics screen (see Figure A-3).

## 3.7 Troubleshooting The FP 3000 D-C Drive Diagnostic Screens

The standard FP 3000 D-C Drive (see Figure A-9) Diagnostic screen uses the following bit positions in registers #'s 0, 10 and 13 for LED light information needed. **Note:** It is the responsibility of the person configuring the AutoMax software to make sure the correct information is configured within these variables. If there is no network communication with the drive, the purple cross mark is displayed on the diagnostics screen (see Figure A-3).

s lelo! Betur	IGMA Universal	Operator Interface -	ITALIMPIANTI - [FP:	8000 Diagnostics]	
	No. 1 Payoff Reel				
	AC Line Sync Loss	Motor Field Loss	Sustained Overload	Motor Brush Wear Low	
S	elf Tuning Failure	Motor Thermostat	Controller Thermostat	AC Line Low	
BI	ower Motor tarter Open	Open Armature Circuit	IET Overcurrent	AC Line High	
	verspeed / vervoltage	Open SCR	Parameter Process Error	In Current Limit	
	Tach Loss	OIM/DCM Comm. Loss	Coast/DB Interlock	Customer Interlock	
	First Fault: Instantaneous Armature Overcurrent. Stop cause: Stop asserted or Run negated. Recent Alarm: Motor Brush Wear Low.				
F	FP3000     D-C Drive				

Figure A-9 The FP3000 D-C Drive Diagnostic Screen

This section discusses the following messages shown on the FP 3000 Drive Diagnostic screen:

- Status, Fault or Alarm boxes
- **First Fault** text messages (Drop Area 1, Register #12)
- Stop Cause text messages (Drop Area 4, Register #22)
- **Recent Alarm** text message (Drop Area 1, Register #14)

## 3.7.1 Status, Faults and Alarm Boxes

The following table lists the FP 3000 status, fault and alarm names, their suggested variable names, bit positions in register #s 0, 10 and 13 and under what conditions this bit is set (appears yellow on the diagnostic screen):

Status/Fault /Alarm Name	Suggested Variable Name	Register/Bit Position	Set When:
AC Line Sync Loss	DRV_FLT1%	10/0	there is a three-phase A-C line synchronization circuit failure.
Motor Field Loss	DRV_FLT1%	10/1	The field loss detection circuit does not sense any field current flowing in the motor shunt field.
Sustained Overload	DRV_FLT1%	10/2	Inverse time overload circuit trips.
Motor Brush Wear Low	DRV_ALM%	13/0	the motor brushes are worn and require replacement. If a motor brush wear detector is not used, customer terminal block pins CTB-12 and CTB-14 must be jumpered to inhibit this alarm.
Self Tuning Failure	DRV_FLT1%	10/3	Self Tuning failure. Refer to parameters F00060 through F00067 and parameters F00089 through F00099 in the FP 3000 manual for possible causes.
Motor Thermostat	DRV_FLT1%	10/4	the motor thermostat indicates high temperature. If a motor thermostat is not used, customer terminal board pins 13 and 14 must be jumpered to inhibit this fault.
Controller Thermostat	DRV_FLT1%	10/5	the Controller thermostat indicates high temperature
AC Line Low	DRV_ALM%	13/1	The A-C line voltage falls below 90% of the nominal AC line voltage.

Blower Motor Starter Open	DRV_FLT1%	10/6	The blower motor starter is open. If a blower motor starter kit is not installed, connector P8 must be fitted with the proper substitute connector to inhibit this fault.
Open Armature Circuit	DRV_FLT1%	10/7	The motor armature circuit is open.
IET Overcurrent	DRV_FLT1%	10/8	Armature current instantaneously exceeds 180% of maximum current.
AC Line High	DRV_ALM%	13/2	The A-C line voltage rises above 115% of the nominal AC line voltage.
Overspeed/ Overvoltage	DRV_FLT1%	10/9	Motor speed exceeds the 110% of the top speed or armature voltage exceeds 130% of motor rated armature volts.
Open SCR	DRV_FLT1%	10/10	one or more SCRs is not working.
Parameter Process Error Flag	DRV_STAT%	0/12	parameters are unacceptable to the drive. If this flag is set to 1 (light is lit), then one or more parameters sent to the drive were rejected. If this flag is set to 0 (light is not lit), then all parameters sent to the drive were accepted. The processing error flag is updated approximately every 500 msec.
In Current Limit	DRV_STAT%	0/9	the motor is not operating within current limit.
Tach Loss	DRV_FLT1%	10/12	the tachometer feedback signal missing.
OIM/DCM Comm. Loss	DRV_FLT1%	10/13	The regulator board was unable to communicate with the interface module (OIM or DCM).
Coast/DB Interlock	DRV_STAT%	0/10	the Coast/DB interlock terminal block (user supplied) is open. This light is green when the Coast/DB interlock terminal block is closed.

Customer DRV_STAT% Interlock	0/11	the Customer Interlock terminal block (software based stop button) is open. This light is green when the Customer Interlock terminal block is closed.
---------------------------------	------	--

# 3.7.2 First Fault Text Message (FRST\_FLT%)

This message (Any of the faults described in the previous table) is the first fault that occurred after the last fault reset.

## 3.7.3 Stop Code Messages (STP\_CAUS%)

The Stop Code message indicates the reason why the drive stopped. Stop Code messages are:

- Stop Asserted or Run negated
- Jog de-asserted for > 1 second
- Internal stop request
- Current limit stop
- Ramp stop
- Coast\DB stop
- Fault stop (or self tuning completed)
- Customer interlock opened
- Coast\DB interlock opened
- Main contact opened

### 3.7.4 Recent Alarm (RCNT\_ALM%) Messages

The text message listed on this line describes the most recent alarm. Besides the alarms described in table x (Motor Brush Wear Low, AC Line Low, and AC Line High) the following alarm text message may also be displayed on the **Recent Alarm** line:

Alarm	Description
Network Communication Timeout	Network Communications is missing or failed to communicate with master (Control Source Select=Network)

Main Contactor Did Not Open	The main (FN) contactor did not open following a stop. If a dynamic braking (DB) kit is used, the DB AUX contact is wired in series with the FN AUX contact.
Main Contactor Did Not Close	The main (FN) contactor did not close following a run or jog command. If a dynamic braking (DB) kit is used, the DB AUX contact is wired in series with the FN AUX contact.
Sustained Speed	Motor speed did not fall below the <b>Stop Speed</b> <b>Threshold</b> in the required amount of time during a stop (this time is automatically set to two times The <b>Deceleration Time</b> time).
Sustained Armature Current	Armature current was unable to reach discontinuous conduction while stopping the drive.
CML Feedback Scaling Error	Armature current feedback could not be scaled properly based on the values entered for <b>Motor</b> <b>Rated Arm Amps</b> and <b>Maximum Current</b> . Verify that these parameter values are correct for your application. Verify that <b>CT Turns</b> <b>Ratio</b> has been set to the value shown in the instruction manual based on your drive type.
Low Minimum Speed	The <b>Minimum Speed</b> value is less than 10% of the <b>Maximum Speed</b> value. This alarm will not be triggered on power-up. It only occurs when maximum or minimum speed has changed. Verify that these parameter values are correct for your application.
Retentive Memory Save Error	An attempt to save information (parameter values, fault log data or the keypad reference value) to retentive memory failed. The drive may continue to be operated.

# 3.8 Troubleshooting The SA 3100 Diagnostic Screens

The standard SA 3100 (see Figure A-10) Diagnostic screens uses the following registers and bit positions for Fault boxes, LED lights and the IGBT schematic information needed. **Note:** It is the responsibility of the person configuring the AutoMax software to make sure the correct information is configured within these variables.



Figure A-10 SA3100 Diagnostic Screen
### 3.8.1 Fault Boxes

The following table lists the SA 3100 fault names, their suggested variable names, register/bit positions and under what conditions this bit is set:

Fault Name	Variable Name	Register A/ Register B/ Bit Position	Set When
DC Bus Over Voltage (High Bus)			This can either be a fault or a warning.
	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/0	A fault is set when the DC bus voltage exceeds the rating of the Power Module. Error code 1018 will be displayed in the error log of the UDC task in which the fault occurred. A warning occurs when the DC bus voltage rises above the configured overvoltage threshold value. The torque is automatically limited to avoid an overvoltage fault.
*No PMI Comm	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/15	A fault occurs when the fiber-optic
and	DRV_STAT %	200/1200/15	communication between the PMI processor and the UDC module is lost due to two consecutive errors of any type.
DC Bus Under Voltage Warning	DRV_WRN	203/1203/1	A warning occurs when the DC bus voltage drops below the configured undervoltage threshold value. The torque is automatically limited to avoid a further drop in the DC bus voltage.

DC Bus Over Current (Low Bus <b>)</b>	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/1	This fault occurs when the DC bus current exceeds 125% of the rated Power Module current. Error code 1020 will be displayed in the error log of the UDC task in which the fault occurred.
Ground Current	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/2 203/1203/2	This can either be a fault or a warning. A <b>fault</b> condition occurs when ground current exceeds the rating of the Power Module. Error code 1021 will be displayed in the error log of the UDC task in which the fault occurred. A <b>warning</b> occurs when the ground current exceeds the configured ground fault current level.
PMI Bus Fault	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/13	This fault indicates that the Resolver & Drive I/O board and the AC power technology circuitry do not respond to requests from the PMI processor. This indicates a hardware failure in the PMI Regulator.
IOC (Instantaneous Over Current) Fault	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/3	Occurs when there is an over current in one of the power devices. Register 204/1204, bit 0-5, indicate which power device detected the overcurrent. Error code 1017 will be displayed in the error log of the UDC task in which the fault occurred.
Resolver Fault	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/8	This fault is a combination of Fault Register 202/1202 bits 8 and 9. <b>Bit 8</b> is set if a sine or cosine signal from the resolver is missing due to a broken wire or the resolver gain tunable (RES_GAN%) has been set too low.
	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/9	Bit 9 is set if a blown fuse is detected

			on the Resolver & Drive I/O board.
PT (Power Technology) Fault	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/11	This fault indicates that an error occurred in the PMI Regulator's AC power technology circuitry. Power should be cycled to allow the Regulator to clear itself and reboot. If DRV RDY LED remains off after repeated cycling of power, check Diagnostic Fault Code register 222/1222 for specific information. Refer to Chapter 6 in the SIGMA NE Operators Manual for a list of PT Fault messages.
Power Supply Fault	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/4	This fault occurs if the voltage level of the 12V Pulse/Tach power supply or the external LEM power supply falls below 8V. Error code 1022 will be displayed in the error log of the UDC task in which the fault occurred.
Over Speed Fault	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/10	This fault occurs if the motor's velocity exceeds the value entered as the Overspeed Trip (RPM) configuration parameter.
Charge Fault	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/6	<ul> <li>This fault occurs when any of the following conditions occur.</li> <li>The DC bus is not fully charged within 10 seconds after the bus enable bit is set.</li> <li>The drive is on and feedback indicates that the pre-charge contactor has opened.</li> <li>The DC bus voltage is less than the value stored in the Power Loss Fault Threshold (PLT_E0%) tunable variable.</li> </ul>

IPD (Inverter Power Device) Fault			This fault occurs when the gate driver turns off an output power device (IGBT) to protect it from an overcurrent. An IOC fault, Bit 3 of register 202/1202, will also be set.
Open Thermistor	DRV_WRN	203/1203/9	A warning occurs if an open circuit is detected in the thermistor circuit
UDC Run Fault	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/14	The UDC Run Fault bit is set if the UDC task stops while the minor loop is running in the PMI Regulator.
Flex I/O Comm. Warning	DRV_WRN	203/1203/13	A warning occurs if a Flex I/O communication problem is detected and logged in UDC registers 10/22 or 11/23
Voltage Ripple Warning	DRV_WRN	203/1203/3	The Voltage Ripple Warning bit is set if the ripple on the DC bus exceeds the configured voltage ripple threshold value.
Reference in Limit Warning	DRV_WRN	203/1203/4	The Reference in Limit Warning bit is set if the reference to the regulator exceeds the maximum value permitted (+- 4095) or is being limited by the system in response to an overvoltage or undervoltage warning.

Over Temperature Fault	DRV_FLT%		This can either be a fault or a warning.
		202/1202/7 203/1203/7	A <b>fault</b> occurs when the internal temperature of the Power Module's heatsink exceeds 100 Deg. C. Error code 1016 will be displayed in the error log of the UDC task in which the fault occurred.
			A <b>warning</b> occurs when the internal temperature of the Power Module's heatsink exceeds 90 Deg. C.
CCLK Not Synchronized Warning	DRV_WRN%	203/1203/	The Reference in Limit Warning bit is set if the reference to the regulator exceeds the maximum value permitted (+- 4095) or is being limited by the system in response to an overvoltage or undervoltage warning.

\*The following logic table explains the Resulting Faults and LED states.

If Variable Name DRV_STAT% 200/1200/Bit 15	And Variable Name DRV_FLT% 202/1202/Bit 15	Resulting Fault or LED State
0	0	No PMI Comm (Fault)
0	1	No PMI Comm (Fault)
1	0	Comm OK (LED State)
1	1	Comm Fault

If there is no communication with the PMI rack, the purple cross mark is displayed on the diagnostics screen (see Figure A-3).

# 3.8.2 LED Lights

The following table lists the LED names, their associated suggested variable names, bit positions and logic for the LED to be on.

LED Name	Variable Name	Register A/ Register B/ Bit Position	Logic for LED ON	LED Turns
Power Supply				
PWR OK(Power Supply OK)	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/1 2	0	green when the PMI power supply is OK.
PMI Processor				
OK (PMI Processor)	DRV_STAT%	200/1200/1 5	1	green when the PMI processor is OK.
COMM OK (Communications OK)	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/1 5	0	green when the communications between the UDC and PMI is working OK.
and	DRV_STAT%	200/1200/1 5	1	
PM FLT(Power Module Fault)	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/1	1	red when either a DC Bus Over Current fault,
or	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/3	1	an Instantaneous Over Current fault, Local Power Interface fault, a Charge Bus Timeout fault, or an Over Temp Fault occurs
or	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/4	1	
or	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/6	1	
or	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/7	1	

EXT FLT (External Fault)	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/0	1	red when there is either an DC Bus Over Voltage
or	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/2	1	fault, a Ground Current fault, a Charge Bus Time
or	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/6	1	Out fault, an Over Speed fault, or a user
or	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/1 0	1	configured fault.
or	IO_CNTRL%	101/1101/2	1	
IO FLT ( Flex I/O Communication Fault )	DRV_FLT%???	203/1203/1 3		(red) when a Flex I/O Comm. fault is detected.

Resolver and Drive				
FDBK OK (Feedback OK)	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/7	0	green when the resolver feedback device is OK.
and	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/8	0	Loss of this LED usually indicates a broken wire to the feedback device.
RPI (Run Permissive Input)	IO_STAT%	201/1201/0	1	green when the run permissive input is OK.
MCR (M-Contactor)	IO_STAT%	201/1201/1	1	amber when the status of the "M-Contactor" output bit is high.
AUX IN1 (Auxiliary input 1)	IO_STAT%	201/1201/1	1	green when the auxiliary input 1 is present.
AUX IN2 (Auxiliary input 2)	IO_STAT%	201/1201/2	1	green when the auxiliary input 2 is present.
AUX IN3 (Auxiliary input 3)	IO_STAT%	201/1201/3	1	green when the auxiliary input 3 is present.
AUX IN4 (Auxiliary input 4)	IO_STAT%	201/1201/4	1	green when the auxiliary input 4 is present.

AUX IN5 (Auxiliary input 5)	IO_STAT%	201/1201/5	1	green when the auxiliary input 5 is present.	
AUX OUT (Auxiliary output)	IO_CNTRL%	101/1101/4	1	amber when the auxiliary output is on.	
AC Power Technology					
DRV RDY (DC Power Technology)	DRV_FLT%	202/1202/1 1	0	green when the AC power technology card is working OK.	

### 3.8.3 IGBT Schematic

The following is the list of variables to show an IGBT Short Fault. The standard screen looks at the following bits of the IGBT diagnostic register to determine which IGBT has been affected by the Fault. The color on the IGBT schematic changes ONLY when both an IGBT bit has been set and the IGBT Short Fault bit has been set.

IGBT Number	Variable Name	Register A/ Register B/ Bit Position	Fault Red on IGBT Schematic When
Phase U Upper	DEV_DIAG%	204/1204/0	Phase U upper power device detects an over current
Phase V Upper	DEV_DIAG%	204/1204/1	Phase V upper power device detects an over current
Phase W Upper	DEV_DIAG%	204/1204/2	Phase W upper power device detects an over current
Phase U Lower	DEV_DIAG%	204/1204/3	Phase U lower power device detects an over current
Phase V Lower	DEV_DIAG%	204/1204/4	Phase V lower power device detects an over current
Phase W Lower	DEV_DIAG%	204/1204/5	Phase W lower power device detects an over current

## 3.9 Troubleshooting The AB1336 Drive Diagnostic Screens

The standard AB1336 Drive (see Figure A-11) Diagnostic screen uses the following bit positions in registers #'s 1 through 6 for LED light information needed. It is the engineer's responsibility to make sure the correct information is configured within these variables. If there is No PMI Comm, the purple cross mark is displayed on the diagnostics screen (see Figure A-).



Figure A-11 AB1336 Diagnostics Screen

Faults fall into three basic categories:

This type of fault:	Has the following definition:	To remove this fault, you need to:
Hard	Trips the drive causing it to stop. You cannot regain control until you reset the drive.	Perform a Drive Reset command or cycle drive power.
Soft	Trips the drive causing it to stop.	<ol> <li>Address the condition that caused the fault.</li> <li>Perform a Clear Faults command.</li> </ol>
Warning	Indicates an undesirable condition. The drive will not stop, but the condition may lead to a fault that will stop the drive.	Address the condition that caused the warning.

Table 2.B

To help troubleshoot your 1336 FORCE drive, the drive logs any faults or warnings in either the fault or warning queue. The faults and warnings that are contained in the queues are either configurable or non-configurable.

Table 2.C

This fault type:	Refers to faults that you:
Configurable	Can set up to either trip the drive or provide only a visual warning while the
	drive continues to operate.
Non-configurable	Cannot disable. These faults are the result of a condition that could damage
	the drive if allowed to persist.

This section discusses the following messages for Status, Fault or Warning boxes shown on the AB1336 Drive Diagnostic screen:

### 3.9.1 Status, Fault or Warning Boxes

The following table lists the AB1336 status, fault and warning names, their suggested variable names, register/bit positions and under what conditions this bit is set and what action to take:

Status/Fault / Warning Name	Suggeste d Variable Name	Register / Bit Position	Set When:
Power- Up\Diagnost ic Fault	UC_PO_F LT	1/1 through 1/16	These faults primarily consist of problems that could occur upon powering up both the current and velocity processors.
			This fault will occur if a fault condition has been sensed on the drive's Main Control Board.
			1. Inspect the bad Main Control Board for damage.
			2. Ensure that the "TE" ground has not become corroded. Check the resistance between the "TE" and "PE" grounds. Verify PE and TE bus/wiring are not shorted together by lifting the TE connection that is tied to building steel and measuring the TE bus to ground. There should be a high resistance (>1 Mohm).
			3. Check the connection at both the ground bus and the point that the ground is connected to building steel to ensure that no corrosion is present.
			4. The fault could also occur if you have changed out a <u>Master/Slave Control Board</u> and there is a firmware revision mismatch with the <u>PLC Comm</u> <u>Adapter Board</u> . Ensure the firmware revisions match.
			5. Try a <b>Drive Reset</b> (or power down and power up the drive) and restart the drive.
			<ol> <li>If the fault occurs again, consider changing the Main Control Board. Make sure to set all dip switches and jumpers when replacing the board.</li> </ol>
			7. If the fault occurs after changing the Main Control Board, consider changing the Master/Slave Control Board. Make sure to set all dip switches and jumpers when replacing the board.

	Remember to clear a fault perform a Drive Reset
	(or power down and power up the drive)!

D-C Bus Over Voltage	UC_FAULT S	2/0	The DC bus voltage has exceeded the maximum value. When this condition occurs, the drive coasts to a stop regardless of the selected stop type.
12016	Hard fault/Red LED		<b>Suggested Action:</b> The input voltage to the drive could be too high.
		• Monitor the AC line for high line voltage or transient conditions. If the incoming power line conditions experience transient power interruptions or significant voltage spikes and/or Power factor correction capacitors on line, it is highly recommended to install isolation type transformers or AC line reactors before the input to the drive.	
			• Increase the deceleration time or install the dynamic brake option because motor regeneration can also cause bus overvoltages. Refer to the user manual for a description of Bus Options (parameter 13) for additional information about bus overvoltages.
			• Another option is to limit the maximum power level that will be transferred from the motor to the DC Bus, by writing the value of % of power level in parameter 178.
			• Other symptoms that can cause Bus Overvoltage are loose connections to the drive, at the motor, within the drive or within the power cabling that cause arcing. When the voltage spike produced by the arc is greater than the drives overvoltage trip threshold the drive will fault.
			• Another possibility is Bus Capacitor failure. One or more capacitors have been stressed to the point of dielectric breakdown within itself. This can also cause arcing within the capacitor.

Transistor Desaturatio n 12017	UC_FAULT S Hard fault/Red LED	2/1	This fault will occur when the drive has sensed an excess voltage drop across Collector and Emitter of one of the IGBT transistors after it has been commanded to turn FULL ON. The Gate Driver Board sensing circuits have measured in excess of 8 to 20 VDC across the collector/emitter junction which should typically be 1 to 3 volts VDC drop When this condition occurs, the drive coasts to a stop regardless of the selected stop type. <b>Suggested Action:</b> Run the power structure diagnostics. Check for a shorted motor or motor wiring. If the drive faults again, consider changing the Gate Driver/Power Supply Board If the Transistor Diagnostics tests do not indication which transistor is causing the problem, replace all IGBT transistor modules in the inverter section. Replace the drive.
Ground Fault 12018	UC_FAULT S Hard Fault /Red LED	2/2	<ul> <li>A current path to earth ground in excess of 100 Amps for 5 to 10 microseconds has been detected at one or more of the drive output terminals. When this condition occurs, the drive coasts to a stop regardless of the selected stop type.</li> <li>Suggested Action:</li> <li>Run the power structure diagnostics.</li> <li>Check the motor and external wiring to the drive output terminals for a grounded condition.</li> <li>Megger the motor leads to ground.</li> <li>DISCONNECT THE MOTOR LEADS FROM THE DRIVE BEFORE MEGGERING MOTOR</li> </ul>
			<ul><li>III</li><li>Replace the Gate Driver Board</li><li>Replace the drive.</li></ul>

Instantaneo us OverCurren t 12019	UC_FAULT S Hard fault/ Red LED	2/3	<ul> <li>There was too much current in the system. When this condition occurs, the drive coasts to a stop regardless of the selected stop type.</li> <li>Suggested Action: <ul> <li>Run the power structure diagnostics.</li> <li>Check for shorted motor or motor wiring.</li> <li>Replace drive</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Adapter Comm. Loss 04024	UC_FAULT S Hard Fault/ Red LED	2/4	A hardware malfunction was detected on power up or reset. A software malfunction has occurred. When this condition occurs, the drive coasts to a stop regardless of the selected stop type Suggested Action: Recycle the power. If the fault does not clear, replace the main control board. If the fault continues, replace the adapter board.
Master/Slav e Drive to Drive Comm. Timeout 16022	UC_FAULT S Hard Fault/ Red LED	2/5	Cable interlock between the Master and Slave drive was opened
Absolute Overspeed 03025	UC_FAULT S Soft Fault/Red LED	2/9	The motor speed has exceeded the speed limit plus <i>Absolute</i> <i>Overspd</i> (parameter 90) settings. When this condition occurs, the drive coasts to a stop regardless of the selected stop type. <b>Suggested Action:</b> If operating in torque mode, check if the load is allowing excessive motor speed. Check if the setting of <i>Absolute Overspd</i> (parameter 90) or the speed limits (parameters 127-128) are too low.

Analog Power Supply Tolerance 03026	UC_FAULT S Soft fault/Red LED	2/10	The analog supply tolerance voltage is outside of the 13V to 18V range. When this condition occurs, the drive coasts to a stop regardless of the selected stop type. <b>Suggested Action:</b> Possible overloading of the analog 15V power supply. Check whether a ScanPort devices is loading the supply by disconnecting them one at a time. Or, if a Standard Adapter board is part of the drive, temporarily remove the L-Option interface board. Or, Change the adapter board. Possible faulty analog 15V power supply. The (power supply) gate driver board or the main control board may require replacement.
Autocomm. /Transistor Diag. Failure 12027	UC_FAULT S Soft Fault/Red LED	2/11	The drive encountered a problem while running the auto- tune tests. When this condition occurs, the drive coasts to a stop regardless of the selected stop type <b>Suggested Action:</b> Check <i>Autotune Status</i> (parameter 44). Additional information to help <i>Understanding the Auto-tuning Procedure</i> . In the AB1336 Force Drive User's Manual
Inverter Temperature Trip 02028	UC_FAULT S Hard fault/Red LED	2/12	There is excessive temperature at the heatsink. When this condition occurs, the drive coasts to a stop regardless of the selected stop type. <b>Suggested Action:</b> Check the cabinet filters, drive fans, and heatsinks. Check the thermal sensor and sensor wiring (connector). Reduce the load or duty cycle if possible. Lower the value of PWM Frequency (parameter 222). Check the roof fan rotation (H frame only).

Software Malfunction 14020	UC_FAULT S Hard Fault/Red LED	2/0 4	When this condition occurs, the drive coasts to a stop regardless of the selected stop type. <b>Suggested Action:</b> Recycle the power. If the fault does not clear, replace the main control board.
Bus Ridethrough Timeout 12032	UC_CP_FLT Soft Fault/Red LED UC_CP_WR N Warning/Yell ow LED	3/0 or 4/0	<ul> <li>There was a bus voltage drop of 150V and power did not return within 2 seconds.</li> <li>Suggested Action: Check the incoming power and fuses. Refer to the Understanding Precharge and Ridethrough Faults section in the Troubleshooting chapter of the user Manual for more information.</li> <li>To configure the alarm as a fault, set bit 0 in CP Fault/Warning Configurable Select (parameter 86) to 1.</li> <li>To configure the alarm as a Warning, set bit 0 in CP Fault/Warning Configurable Select (parameter 86) to 1.</li> <li>To configure the alarm as a Warning, set bit 0 in CP Fault/Warning Configurable Select (parameter 87) to 0</li> <li>To disregard the alarm, set bit 0 in CP Fault/Warning Configurable Select (parameter 86) and CP Warning/None</li> </ul>
Bus Precharge Timeout 12033	UC_CP_FLT Soft fault/Red LED UC_CP_WR N Warning/Yell ow LED	3/1 or 4/1	<ul> <li>The precharge function could not complete within 30 seconds.</li> <li>Suggested Action: Refer to the Understanding Precharge and Ridethrough Faults section in the troubleshooting chapter of the user manual for more information.</li> <li>To configure the alarm as a fault, set bit 1 in CP Fault/Warning Configurable Select (parameter 86) to 1.</li> <li>To configure the alarm as a Warning, set bit 1 in CP Fault/Warning Configurable Select (parameter 87) to 0</li> <li>To disregard the alarm, set bit 1 in CP Fault/Warning Configurable Select (parameter 86) and CP Warning/None Configurable Select (parameter 87) to 0.</li> </ul>

Bus Drop (150 Volts Below Nom.) 12034	UC_CP_FLT Soft fault/Red LED or UC_CP_WR N Warning /Yellow LED	3/2 or 4/2	The bus voltage dropped 150V below the bus tracker voltage. <b>Suggested Action:</b> Monitor the incoming AC line for low voltage or line power interruption. Refer to the Understanding Precharge and Ridethrough Faults section in the Troubleshooting chapter of the user Manual for more information. To configure the alarm as a fault, set bit 2 in CP Fault/Warning Configurable Select (parameter 86) to 1. To configure the alarm as a Warning, set bit 2 in CP Fault/Warning Configurable Select (parameter 86) to 0 and set bit 2 in CP Warning/None Configuration Select. (Parameter 87) to 0 To disregard the alarm, set bit 2 in CP Fault/Warning Configurable Select (parameter 86) and CP Warning
			Configuration Select (Parameter 80) and CP Warning/ None Configuration Select (Parameter 87) to 0
Bus Under Voltage 12035	UC_CP_FLT Soft fault/Red LED UC_CP_WR N Warning/Yell ow LED	3/3 or 4/3	The bus voltage drops below the level set in <i>Line Undervolts</i> (parameter 27). This is the level where the drive would enter ridethrough if it occurs before a 150 volt drop in bus voltage. <b>Suggested Action:</b> Refer to the Understanding Precharge and Ridethrough Faults section in the troubleshooting chapter of the user manual for more information. To configure the alarm as a fault, set bit 3 in CP Fault/Warning Configurable Select (parameter 86) to 1. To configure the alarm as a Warning, set bit 3 in CP Fault/Warning Configurable Select (parameter 86) to 0 and set bit 3 in CP Warning/None Configuration Select. (Parameter 87) to 0
			To disregard the alarm, set bit 3 in CP Fault/Warning Configurable Select (parameter 86) and CP Warning/None Configuration Select (Parameter 87) to 0.

Bus Ridethrough > 5 Cycles 12036	UC_CP_FLT Soft fault/ red UC_CP_WR N Warning/Yell ow LED	3/4 or 4/4	<ul> <li>At least 5 ridethrough cycles have occurred within a 20 second period. This indicates a converter problem or a problem with the incoming power.</li> <li>Suggested Action: Monitor the incoming AC line for low voltage or line power interruption. Refer to the Understanding Precharge and Ridethrough Faults section in the Troubleshooting chapter of the user Manual for more information.</li> <li>To configure the alarm as a fault, set bit 4 in CP Fault/Warning Configurable Select (parameter 86) to 1.</li> <li>To configure the alarm as a Warning, set bit 4 in CP Fault/Warning Configurable Select (parameter 87) to 0</li> <li>To disregard the alarm, set bit 4 in CP Fault/Warning Configurable Select (parameter 86) and CP Warning/None Configurable Select (parameter 86) and CP Warning/None Configurable Select (parameter 86) and CP Warning/None Configurable Select (Parameter 87) to 0.</li> </ul>
Bus Ridethrough >75 Cycles (Open Circuit) 12037	UC_CP_FLT Soft fault/Red LED UC_CP_WR N Warning/Yell ow LED	3/5 or 4/5	<ul> <li>The fast flux up current is less than 50% of commanded.</li> <li>Suggested Action: Make sure the motor is properly connected. Refer to the Understanding Precharge and Ridethrough Faults section in the troubleshooting chapter of the user manual for more information.</li> <li>To configure the alarm as a fault, set bit 5 in CP Fault/Warning Configurable Select (parameter 86) to 1.</li> <li>To configure the alarm as a Warning, set bit 5 in CP Fault/Warning Configurable Select (parameter 87) to 0</li> <li>To disregard the alarm, set bit 5 in CP Fault/Warning Configurable Select (parameter 86) and CP Warning/None Configurable Select (parameter 86) and CP Warning/None Configurable Select (Parameter 87) to 0.</li> </ul>

Feedback	UC_VP_FLT	5/0	A loss of feedback occurred.
05048	5048 Soft LED	or 6/0	<b>Suggested Action:</b> Check the encoder wiring. Verify that the encoder signals are free of noise.
	UC_VP_WR N Warning/Yell ow LED		To configure the alarm as a fault, set bit 0 in VP Fault/Warning Configurable Select (parameter 88) to 1. To configure the alarm as a Warning, set bit 0 in VP Fault/Warning Configurable Select (parameter 88) to 0 and set bit 0 in VP Warning/None Configuration Select. (Parameter 89) to 0
			To disregard the alarm, set bit 0 in VP Fault/Warning Configurable Select (parameter 88) and VP Warning/None Configuration Select (Parameter 89) to 0
Inverter Over Temperature	UC_VP_FLT Soft	5/1 or	An inverter overtemperature is pending. The inverter heatsink temperature has exceeded 80 Degrees Celsius and is approaching the trip level.
02049	fault/Red LED	6/1	<b>Suggested Action:</b> Check the cabinet filters, drive fans, and heatsinks. Check the thermal sensor and sensor wiring (connector). Reduce the load or duty cycle if possible.
	UC_VP_WR N Warning/Yell ow LED		Lower the value of PWM Frequency (parameter 222). Check the roof fan rotation (H frame only).
			To configure the alarm as a fault, set bit 1 in VP Fault/Warning Configurable Select (parameter 88) to 1.
			To configure the alarm as a Warning, set bit 1 in VP Fault/Warning Configurable Select (parameter 88) to 0 and set bit 1 in VP Warning/None Configuration Select. (Parameter 89) to 0
			To disregard the alarm, set bit 1 in VP Fault/Warning Configurable Select (parameter 88) and VP Warning/None Configuration Select (Parameter 89) to 0

-			
Motor Over Temperature Tripped 01050	UC_VP_FLT Soft fault/Red LED	5/2 or	Motor Overtemperature tripped. This fault will occur when the high temperature switch, located in the motor, senses a high temperature condition and opens. When this condition occurs, the drive coasts to a stop regardless of the selected stop type.
	UC_VP_WR	6/2	Suggested Actions: Check for possible motor overheating.
	Warning/Yell		• Ensure that the switch is actually open and the wiring between the switch and drive is not damaged.
	ow LED		• Review the process to determine if something mechanical is causing an overloaded condition.
			• Ensure that the motor's cooling fan is operating correctly.
			• Inspect the motor and the power wiring located between the drive and the motor.
			• Conduct historical trending of the motor's current feedback to determine if overloaded conditions exist.
			• If the motor temperature is excessive, reduce the accel/decel times (parameters 125-126) or reduce the load.
			To configure the alarm as a fault, set bit 2 in VP Fault/Warning Configurable Select (parameter 88) to 1.
			To configure the alarm as a Warning, set bit 2 in VP Fault/Warning Configurable Select (parameter 88) to 0 and set bit 2 in VP Warning/None Configuration Select. (Parameter 89) to 0
			To disregard the alarm, set bit 2 in VP Fault/Warning Configurable Select (parameter 88) and VP Warning/None Configuration Select (Parameter 89) to 0

3.6			
Motor			A motor overload is pending. The drive has reached 95% of
OverLoad	UC_VP_FLT	5/3	the level required for a motor overload trip (see fault 01052
Pending	Soft	or	for fault or fault 01084 for warning)
01051	fault/Red		Suggested Action: Check for possible motor overheating.
		(12	<ul> <li>If the motor temperature is excessive, reduce the accel/decel times (parameters 125-126) or reduce the load</li> </ul>
	UC_VP_WR N	0/3	<ul> <li>If the motor temperature is acceptable, increase the value of Overload Limit (parameter 92).</li> </ul>
	Warning/Yell		
	ow LED		Fault/Warning Configurable Select (parameter 88) to 1.
			To configure the alarm as a Warning, set bit 3 in VP Fault/Warning Configurable Select (parameter 88) to 0 and set bit 3 in VP Warning/None Configuration Select. (Parameter 89) to 0
			To disregard the alarm, set bit 3 in VP Fault/Warning Configurable Select (parameter 88) and VP Warning/None Configuration Select (Parameter 89) to 0
Motor			Motor overload tripped. The drive has reached the level of
OverI oad			accumulated motor current over time as set by Overload
Tripped			Limit (parameter 92)
mpped	UC VD ELT	E / 4	Earnie (parameter 72).
01050	UC_VP_FLI	5/4	
01052	Soft faul/Red or LED Or If the motor temperature is excessive, reduce to times (parameters 125-126) or reduce the load		<ul> <li>If the motor temperature is excessive, reduce the accel/decel times (parameters 125-126) or reduce the load.</li> </ul>
			If the motor temperature is acceptable, increase the value of
	UC_VP_WR N	6/4	Overload Lomit (parameter 92).
	1N		To configure the alarm as a fault, set bit 4 in VP
	warning/Yell ow LED		Fault/Warning Configurable Select (parameter 88) to 1.
			To configure the alarm as a Warning, set bit 4 in VP Fault/Warning Configurable Select (parameter 88) to 0 and set bit 4 in VP Warning/None Configuration Select. (Parameter 89) to 0
			To disregard the alarm, set bit 4 in VP Fault/Warning
			Configurable Select (parameter 88) and VP
			Warning/None Configuration Select (Parameter 89) to 0

Motor			The drive is in a limit condition for a period of time in
Stalled			excess of the value specified in Stall Delay (parameter 91)
otaned			with the motor at zero speed
	UC VD ELT	5/5	with the motor at zero speed.
01053		or	Suggested Action: Check Torque Limit Sts (parameter
	Soft	-	183) to see which limit has occurred. Increase the
	fault/Red		appropriate limit parameter or reduce the load.
	LED		
		6/5	To configure the alarm as a fault, set bit 5 in VP
	UC_VP_WR	,	Fault/Warning Configurable Select (parameter 88) to 1.
	Ν		
	Warning/Yell		To configure the alarm as a Warning, set bit 5 in VP Fault/Warning
	ow LED		Configurable Select (parameter 88) to 0 and set bit 5 in VP
			Warning/None Configuration Select. (Parameter 89) to 0
			To disregard the alarm, set bit 5 in VP Fault/Warning
			Configurable Select (parameter 88) and VP
			Warning/None Configuration Select (Parameter 89) to 0
External			The external fault input from the L Option Board is open
Fault			
		- ( .	Suggested Action: Check the external circuit for cause of
	UC_VP_FLT	5/6	an open input signal.
05054	Soft	or	
	fault/Red		To configure the alarm as a fault, set bit 6 in VP
	LED		Fault/Warning Configurable Select (parameter 88) to 1.
		6/6	
	UC_VP_WR		To configure the alarm as a Warning, set bit 6 in VP Fault/Warning
	Ν		Warning/None Configuration Select (Parameter 89) to 0
	Warning/Yell		warning/ work Configuration Select. (Faranceer 69) to 0
	ow LED		
			To disregard the alarm, set bit 6 in VP Fault/Warning
			Configurable Select (parameter 88) and VP
			Warning/None Configuration Select (Parameter 89) to 0

RMS Fault 02055	UC_VP_FLT or UC_VP_WR N	5/7 or 6/7	To configure the alarm as a fault, set bit 7 in VP Fault/Warning Configurable Select (parameter 88) to 1. To configure the alarm as a Warning, set bit 7 in VP Fault/Warning Configurable Select (parameter 88) to 0 and set bit 7 in VP Warning/None Configuration Select. (Parameter 89) to 0 To disregard the alarm, set bit 7 in VP Fault/Warning Configurable Select (parameter 88) and VP Warning/None Configuration Select (Parameter 89) to 0
Dynamic Brake Over Temp 09059	UC_VP_FLT or UC_VP_WR N	5/1 1 or 6/1 1	To configure the alarm as a fault, set bit 11 in VP Fault/Warning Configurable Select (parameter 88) to 1. To configure the alarm as a Warning, set bit 11 in VP Fault/Warning Configurable Select (parameter 88) to 0 and set bit 11 in VP Warning/None Configuration Select. (Parameter 89) to 0 To disregard the alarm, set bit 11 in VP Fault/Warning Configurable Select (parameter 88) and VP Warning/None Configurable Select (Parameter 89) to 0
Inverter Overload Pending 02061	UC_VP_FLT Soft fault/Red LED UC_VP_WR N Warning/Yell ow LED	5/1 3 or 6/1 3	An inverter (IT) overload is pending. The inverter current has been in excess of 105% of Inverter Amps (parameter 220) too long. Continued operation at this load level will cause an overload trip. <b>Suggested Action:</b> Reduce the load or duty cycle if possible. To configure the alarm as a fault, set bit 13 in VP Fault/Warning Configurable Select (parameter 88) to 1. To configure the alarm as a Warning, set bit 13 in VP Fault/Warning Configurable Select (parameter 88) to 0 and set bit 13 in VP Warning/None Configuration Select. (Parameter 89) to 0 To disregard the alarm, set bit 13 in VP Fault/Warning Configurable Select (parameter 88) and VP Warning/None Configuration Select (Parameter 89) to 0

Inverter Overload	UC_VP_FLT		Inverter (IT) overload. The inverter current has been in
Tripped	Soft	5/1 5.0r	excess of 105% of Inverter Amps (parameter 220) too
02063	fault/Red	5.01	long.
0_000	LED		Suggested Action: Reduce the load or duty cycle if
	UC VP WR	6/1 5	possible.
	N (as if	5	To configure the alarm as a fault, set bit 15 in VP
	Warning/Yell ow LED		Fault/Warning Configurable Select (parameter 88) to 1.
			To configure the alarm as a Warning, set bit 15 in VP Fault/Warning Configurable Select (parameter 88) to 0 and set bit 15 in VP
			Warning/None Configuration Select. (Parameter 89) to 0
			To disregard the alarm, set bit 15 in VP Fault/Warning
			Configurable Select (parameter 88) and VP
			Warning/None Configuration Select (Parameter 89) to 0

A.1 Tro	publeshooting The SD 3000 and SD 3000 Regen Diagnostic Screens	
A.1.1	Fault Boxes	
A.1.2	LED Lights	
A.1.3	SCR Schematic	
A.2 Tro	bubleshooting The SA 3000 Diagnostic Screen	
A.2.1	Fault Boxes	
A.2.2	LED Lights	
A.2.3	IGBT Schematic	
A.3 Tro	publeshooting The SA 3000 Parallel A, B and C Diagnostic Screens	
A.3.1	Fault Boxes	
A.3.2	LED Lights	
A.3.3	IGBT Schematic	
A.4 Tro	publeshooting The SB 3000 Parallel A, B and C Diagnostic Screens	
A.4.1	Fault Boxes	
A.4.2	LED Lights	
A.4.3	IGBT Schematic	
A.5 Tro	bubleshooting The SA 500 Diagnostic Screen	
A.5.1	Fault Boxes	
A.5.2	LED Lights	
A.6 Tro	bubleshooting The GV 3000 A-C Drive Diagnostic Screens	
A.6.1	Fault Boxes	
A.7 Tro	bubleshooting The FP 3000 D-C Drive Diagnostic Screens	
A.7.1	Status, Faults and Alarm Boxes	
A.7.2	First Fault Text Message (FRST FLT%)	
A.7.3	Stop Code Messages (STP CAUS%)	
A.7.4	Recent Alarm (RCNT ALM%) Messages	
A.8 Tro	publeshooting The SA 3100 Diagnostic Screens	
A.8.1	Fault Boxes	
A.8.2	LED Lights	
A.8.3	IGBT Schematic	
A.9 Tro	publeshooting The AB1336 Drive Diagnostic Screens	
A.9.1	Status, Fault or Warning Boxes	
	-	

Figure A-1 The SD3000 Diagnostic Screen	
Figure A-2 SD3000 Regen Diagnostic Screen	
Figure A-3 Diagnostics Screen When No PMI Communication Occurs	169
Figure A-4 The A3000 Diagnostic Screen	
Figure A-5 The SA3000 Parallel 3 Diagnostic Screen	
Figure A-6 The SB3000 Parallel 3 Diagnostic Screen	
Figure A-7 The SA500 Diagnostic Screen	
Figure A-8 The GV3000 A-C Drive Diagnostic Screen	
Figure A-9 The FP3000 D-C Drive Diagnostic Screen	
Figure A-10 SA3100 Diagnostic Screen	
Figure A-11 AB1336 Diagnostics Screen	

### www.rockwellautomation.com

#### **Corporate Headquarters**

Rockwell Automation, 777 East Wisconsin Avenue, Suite 1400, Milwaukee, WI, 53202-5302 USA, Tel: (1) 414.212.5200, Fax: (1) 414.212.5201

#### Headquarters for Allen-Bradley Products, Rockwell Software Products and Global Manufacturing Solutions

Americas: Rockwell Automation, 1201 South Second Street, Milwaukee, WI 53204-2496 USA, Tel: (1) 414.382.2000, Fax: (1) 414.382.4444 Europe: Rockwell Automation SA/NV, Vorstlaan/Boulevard du Souverain 36-BP 3A/B, 1170 Brussels, Belgium, Tel: (32) 2 663 0600, Fax: (32) 2 663 0640 Asia Pacific: Rockwell Automation, 27/F Citicorp Centre, 18 Whitfield Road, Causeway Bay, Hong Kong, Tel: (852) 2887 4788, Fax: (852) 2508 1846

#### Headquarters for Dodge and Reliance Electric Products

Americas: Rockwell Automation, 6040 Ponders Court, Greenville, SC 29615-4617 USA, Tel: (1) 864.297.4800, Fax: (1) 864.281.2433 Europe: Rockwell Automation, Brühlstraße 22, D-74834 Elztal-Dallau, Germany, Tel: (49) 6261 9410, Fax: (49) 6261 1774 Asia Pacific: Rockwell Automation, 55 Newton Road, #11-01/02 Revenue House, Singapore 307987, Tel: (65) 351 6723, Fax: (65) 355 1733

Publication SIG NE-UM001A-EN-P – January 2003

Copyright © 2001 Rockwell Automation. All rights reserved. Printed in USA.